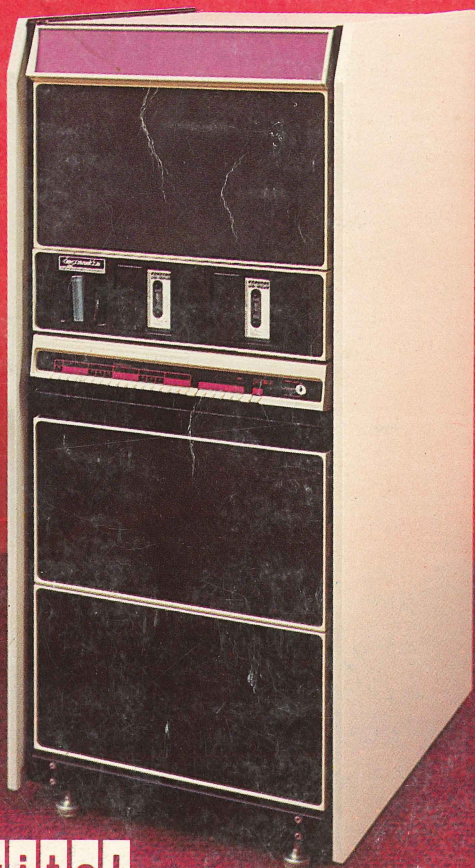


pdp11

04/05/10/35/40/45

processor  
handbook



digital



# digital

DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION, Corporate Headquarters: Maynard, Massachusetts 01754, Telephone: (617)897-5111—SALES AND SERVICE OFFICES: UNITED STATES—ALABAMA, Huntsville • ARIZONA, Phoenix and Tucson • CALIFORNIA, El Segundo, Los Angeles, Oakland, Ridgecrest, San Diego, San Francisco (Mountain View), Santa Ana, Santa Clara, Stanford, Sunnyvale and Woodland Hills • COLORADO, Englewood • CONNECTICUT, Fairfield and Meriden • DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA, Washington (Lanham, MD) • FLORIDA, Ft. Lauderdale and Orlando • GEORGIA, Atlanta • HAWAII, Honolulu • ILLINOIS, Chicago (Rolling Meadows) • INDIANA, Indianapolis • IOWA, Bettendorf • KENTUCKY, Louisville • LOUISIANA, New Orleans (Metairie) • MARYLAND, Odenton • MASSACHUSETTS, Marlborough, Waltham and Westfield • MICHIGAN, Detroit (Farmington Hills) • MINNESOTA, Minneapolis • MISSOURI, Kansas City (Independence) and St. Louis • NEW HAMPSHIRE, Manchester • NEW JERSEY, Cherry Hill, Fairfield, Metuchen and Princeton • NEW MEXICO, Albuquerque • NEW YORK, Albany, Buffalo (Cheektowaga), Long Island (Huntington Station), Manhattan, Rochester and Syracuse • NORTH CAROLINA, Durham/Chapel Hill • OHIO, Cleveland (Euclid), Columbus and Dayton • OKLAHOMA, Tulsa • OREGON, Eugene and Portland • PENNSYLVANIA, Allentown, Philadelphia (Bluebell) and Pittsburgh • SOUTH CAROLINA, Columbia • TENNESSEE, Knoxville and Nashville • TEXAS, Austin, Dallas and Houston • UTAH, Salt Lake City • VIRGINIA, Richmond • WASHINGTON, Bellevue • WISCONSIN, Milwaukee (Brookfield) • INTERNATIONAL —ARGENTINA, Buenos Aires • AUSTRALIA, Adelaide, Brisbane, Canberra, Melbourne, Perth and Sydney • AUSTRIA, Vienna • BELGIUM, Brussels • BOLIVIA, La Paz • BRAZIL, Rio de Janeiro and Sao Paulo • CANADA, Calgary, Edmonton, Halifax, London, Montreal, Ottawa, Toronto, Vancouver and Winnipeg • CHILE, Santiago • DENMARK, Copenhagen • FINLAND, Helsinki • FRANCE, Lyon, Grenoble and Paris • GERMAN FEDERAL REPUBLIC, Cologne, Frankfurt, Hamburg, Hannover, Munich, Nuremberg, Stuttgart and West Berlin • HONG KONG • INDIA, Bombay • INDONESIA, Jakarta • IRELAND, Dublin • ITALY, Milan, Rome and Turin • IRAN, Tehran • JAPAN, Osaka and Tokyo • MALAYSIA, Kuala Lumpur • MEXICO, Mexico City • NETHERLANDS, Utrecht • NEW ZEALAND, Auckland and Christchurch • NORWAY, Oslo • PUERTO RICO, Santurce • SINGAPORE • SPAIN, Madrid • SWEDEN, Gothenburg and Stockholm • SWITZERLAND, Geneva and Zurich • UNITED KINGDOM, Birmingham, Bristol, Epsom, Edinburgh, Leeds, Leicester, London, Manchester and Reading • VENEZUELA, Caracas •



**digital**

**pdp11**

**04/05/10/35/40/45**

**processor  
handbook**

**digital equipment corporation**



Copyright © 1975, by Digital Equipment Corporation

DEC, PDP, UNIBUS are registered trademarks  
of Digital Equipment Corporation.



# CONTENTS

|                                              |         |
|----------------------------------------------|---------|
| <b>CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION</b>                | 1-1     |
| 1.1 PDP-11 FAMILY                            | 1-1     |
| 1.2 SCOPE                                    | 1-2     |
| 1.3 COMPUTERS                                | 1-2     |
| 1.3.1 PDP-11/04                              | 1-2     |
| 1.3.2 PDP-11/05 & PDP-11/10                  | 1-3     |
| 1.3.3 PDP-11/35 & PDP-11/40                  | 1-3     |
| 1.3.4 PDP-11/45                              | 1-4     |
| 1.3.5 Comparison of Computers                | 1-5     |
| 1.4 PERIPHERALS/OPTIONS                      | 1-6     |
| 1.5 SOFTWARE                                 | 1-6     |
| 1.6 NUMBER SYSTEMS                           | 1-8     |
| <br><b>CHAPTER 2 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE</b>     | <br>2-1 |
| 2.1 UNIBUS                                   | 2-1     |
| 2.2 CENTRAL PROCESSOR                        | 2-2     |
| 2.3 MEMORY                                   | 2-6     |
| 2.4 AUTOMATIC PRIORITY INTERRUPTS            | 2-7     |
| <br><b>CHAPTER 3 ADDRESSING MODES</b>        | <br>3-1 |
| 3.1 SINGLE OPERAND ADDRESSING                | 3-1     |
| 3.2 DOUBLE OPERAND ADDRESSING                | 3-2     |
| 3.3 DIRECT ADDRESSING                        | 3-4     |
| 3.3.1 Register Mode                          | 3-4     |
| 3.3.2 Auto-increment Mode                    | 3-5     |
| 3.3.3 Auto-decrement Mode                    | 3-7     |
| 3.3.4 Index Mode                             | 3-8     |
| 3.4 DEFERRED (INDIRECT) ADDRESSING           | 3-10    |
| 3.5 USE OF THE PC AS A GENERAL REGISTER      | 3-12    |
| 3.5.1 Immediate Mode                         | 3-13    |
| 3.5.2 Absolute Addressing                    | 3-13    |
| 3.5.3 Relative Addressing                    | 3-14    |
| 3.5.4 Relative Deferred Addressing           | 3-15    |
| 3.6 USE OF STACK POINTER AS GENERAL REGISTER | 3-16    |
| 3.7 SUMMARY OF ADDRESSING MODES              | 3-16    |
| 3.7.1 General Register Addressing            | 3-16    |
| 3.7.2 Program Counter Addressing             | 3-18    |
| <br><b>CHAPTER 4 INSTRUCTION SET</b>         | <br>4-1 |
| 4.1 INTRODUCTION                             | 4-1     |
| 4.2 INSTRUCTION FORMATS                      | 4-2     |
| 4.3 LIST OF INSTRUCTIONS                     | 4-4     |
| 4.4 SINGLE OPERAND INSTRUCTIONS              | 4-6     |
| 4.5 DOUBLE OPERAND INSTRUCTIONS              | 4-22    |
| 4.6 PROGRAM CONTROL INSTRUCTIONS             | 4-32    |
| 4.7 MISCELLANEOUS                            | 4-70    |



|                                                                    |                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>CHAPTER 5 PROGRAMMING TECHNIQUES .....</b>                      | <b>5-1</b>     |
| 5.1 THE STACK .....                                                | 5-1            |
| 5.2 SUBROUTINE LINKAGE .....                                       | 5-5            |
| 5.2.1 Subroutine Calls .....                                       | 5-5            |
| 5.2.2 Argument Transmission .....                                  | 5-6            |
| 5.2.3 Subroutine Return .....                                      | 5-9            |
| 5.2.4 PDP-11 Subroutine Advantage .....                            | 5-9            |
| 5.3 INTERRUPTS .....                                               | 5-9            |
| 5.3.1 General Principles .....                                     | 5-9            |
| 5.3.2 Nesting .....                                                | 5-10           |
| 5.4 REENTRANCY .....                                               | 5-13           |
| 5.5 POSITION INDEPENDENT CODE .....                                | 5-15           |
| 5.6 CO-ROUTINES .....                                              | 5-16           |
| 5.7 PROCESSOR TRAPS .....                                          | 5-17           |
| 5.7.1 Power Failure .....                                          | 5-17           |
| 5.7.2 Odd Addressing Errors .....                                  | 5-17           |
| 5.7.3 Time-Out Errors .....                                        | 5-17           |
| 5.7.4 Reserved Instructions .....                                  | 5-17           |
| 5.7.5 Trap Handling .....                                          | 5-17           |
| <br><b>CHAPTER 6 PDP-11/04 .....</b>                               | <br><b>6-1</b> |
| 6.1 DESCRIPTION .....                                              | 6-1            |
| 6.2 OPTIONS .....                                                  | 6-2            |
| 6.3 SPECIFICATIONS .....                                           | 6-3            |
| 6.4 OPERATOR'S CONSOLE OPERATION .....                             | 6-4            |
| <br><b>CHAPTER 7 PDP-11/05 &amp; 11/10 .....</b>                   | <br><b>7-1</b> |
| 7.1 DESCRIPTION .....                                              | 7-1            |
| 7.2 INTERNAL CPU EQUIPMENT .....                                   | 7-1            |
| 7.3 SPECIFICATIONS .....                                           | 7-2            |
| 7.4 CONSOLE OPERATION .....                                        | 7-5            |
| <br><b>CHAPTER 8 PDP-11/35 &amp; 11/40 .....</b>                   | <br><b>8-1</b> |
| 8.1 DESCRIPTION .....                                              | 8-1            |
| 8.2 OPTIONS .....                                                  | 8-1            |
| 8.3 SPECIFICATIONS .....                                           | 8-3            |
| 8.4 ARITHMETIC OPTIONS .....                                       | 8-5            |
| 8.5 CONSOLE OPERATION .....                                        | 8-15           |
| <br><b>CHAPTER 9 PDP-11/35 &amp; 11/40 MEMORY MANAGEMENT .....</b> | <br><b>9-1</b> |
| 9.1 GENERAL .....                                                  | 9-1            |
| 9.2 RELOCATION .....                                               | 9-3            |
| 9.3 PROTECTION .....                                               | 9-6            |
| 9.4 ACTIVE PAGE REGISTERS .....                                    | 9-7            |
| 9.5 VIRTUAL & PHYSICAL ADDRESSES .....                             | 9-13           |
| 9.6 STATUS REGISTERS .....                                         | 9-15           |
| 9.7 INSTRUCTIONS .....                                             | 9-17           |
| 9.8 STACK LIMIT .....                                              | 9-23           |



|                                                             |             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>CHAPTER 10 PDP-11/45 .....</b>                           | <b>10-1</b> |
| 10.1 DESCRIPTION .....                                      | 10-1        |
| 10.2 MEMORY .....                                           | 10-5        |
| 10.3 PROCESSOR TRAPS .....                                  | 10-8        |
| 10.4 MULTIPROGRAMMING .....                                 | 10-10       |
| 10.5 SPECIFICATIONS .....                                   | 10-11       |
| 10.6 CONSOLE OPERATION .....                                | 10-14       |
| <b>CHAPTER 11 PDP-11/45 MEMORY MANAGEMENT .....</b>         | <b>11-1</b> |
| 11.1 BASIC ADDRESSING LOGIC .....                           | 11-1        |
| 11.2 VIRTUAL ADDRESSING .....                               | 11-2        |
| 11.3 INTERRUPT CONDITIONS UNDER MANAGEMENT<br>CONTROL ..... | 11-3        |
| 11.4 CONSTRUCTION OF A PHYSICAL ADDRESS .....               | 11-3        |
| 11.5 MANAGEMENT REGISTERS .....                             | 11-5        |
| 11.6 FAULT RECOVERY REGISTERS .....                         | 11-8        |
| 11.7 EXAMPLES .....                                         | 11-12       |
| 11.8 TRANSPARENCY .....                                     | 11-17       |
| 11.9 MANAGEMENT REGISTER MAP .....                          | 11-18       |
| <b>CHAPTER 12 PDP-11/45 FLOATING POINT PROCESSOR .....</b>  | <b>12-1</b> |
| 12.1 INTRODUCTION .....                                     | 12-1        |
| 12.2 OPERATION .....                                        | 12-1        |
| 12.3 ARCHITECTURE .....                                     | 12-2        |
| 12.4 FLOATING POINT DATA FORMATS .....                      | 12-3        |
| 12.5 FPP STATUS REGISTER .....                              | 12-4        |
| 12.6 FEC REGISTER .....                                     | 12-6        |
| 12.7 FPP INSTRUCTION ADDRESSING .....                       | 12-6        |
| 12.8 INSTRUCTION TIMING .....                               | 12-7        |
| 12.9 FPP INSTRUCTIONS .....                                 | 12-7        |
| <b>Appendix A UNIBUS Addresses .....</b>                    | <b>A-1</b>  |
| <b>Appendix B Instruction Timing .....</b>                  | <b>B-1</b>  |
| <b>Appendix C Instruction Index .....</b>                   | <b>C-1</b>  |



## CHAPTER 1

# INTRODUCTION

### 1.1 PDP-11 FAMILY

The PDP-11 family includes several central processor units (CPU's), a large number of peripheral devices and options, and extensive software. New equipment will be compatible with existing family members. The user can choose the system which is most suitable for his application, but as needs change, he can easily add or change hardware.

All PDP-11 computers discussed in this Handbook have the following features:

- 16-bit word (two 8-bit bytes)  
direct addressing of 32K 16-bit words or 64K 8-bit bytes ( $K = 1024$ )
- Word or byte processing  
very efficient handling of 8-bit characters without the need to rotate, swap, or mask
- Asynchronous operation  
system components run at their highest possible speed, replacement with faster subsystems means faster operation without other hardware or software changes
- Modular component design  
extreme ease and flexibility in configuring systems
- Stack processing  
hardware sequential memory manipulation makes it easy to handle structured data, subroutines, and interrupts
- Direct Memory Access (DMA)  
inherent in the architecture is direct memory access for multiple devices
- 8 internal general-purpose registers  
used interchangeably for accumulators or address generation
- Automatic Priority Interrupt  
four-line, multi-level system permits grouping of interrupt lines according to response requirements
- Vectored interrupts  
fast interrupt response without device polling
- Single & double operand instructions  
powerful and convenient set of programming instructions
- Power Fail & Automatic Restart  
hardware detection and software protection for fluctuations in the AC power



## 1.2 SCOPE

This Handbook describes the following computers designed and manufactured by Digital Equipment Corporation.

PDP-11/04  
PDP-11/05  
PDP-11/10  
PDP-11/35  
PDP-11/40  
PDP-11/45

The intent is to provide extensive information on operation of the computers in general, performance and features of the computers, and basic programming. This Handbook is not intended to be the sole reference for the computers. More comprehensive and detailed information is available in Processor Manuals, Maintenance Manuals, and Programming Manuals. Improvements and modifications in equipment made after July 1975 are not reflected in this Handbook.

## 1.3 COMPUTERS

### 1.3.1 PDP-11/04

The PDP-11/04 computer uses MOS semiconductor memory, and is housed in a 5¼" high assembly. Between 4K and 28K words of memory can be implemented within the basic assembly unit, which includes expansion space and DC power for adding options.

The PDP-11/04 is a full-fledged computer that can execute all the basic PDP-11 instructions. It enjoys the advantage of being able to use all the extensive developed software and peripheral equipment. If there is ever a need to upgrade to a more powerful central processor, the PDP-11/04 can simply be replaced by a different PDP-11 CPU, and software and peripherals remain the same in the system.

The minimum PDP-11/04 includes:

- 4K words of MOS memory  
Increased processing speed at a lower cost per bit.
- Automatic bootstrap loader  
Automatic starts from a variety of peripheral devices.
- Self-test feature  
ROM hardware automatically performs diagnostics on the CPU and memory. Pinpoints failures to the circuit board level, thereby reducing maintenance costs.
- Operator's front panel  
Allows complete control of the computer via any ASCII terminal. All front panel functions are key entries on the terminal either local or remote, thereby eliminating the need and cost of a programmer's console.

The following optional equipment is available:

Battery backup  
Programmer's console  
Line frequency clock  
Serial communications line interface

The PDP-11/04 is prewired to accept extra memory, communication interfaces, and standard peripheral device controllers. The included CPU power supply has sufficient excess capacity to handle optional internal equipment.

### **1.3.2 PDP-11/05 & PDP-11/10**

The PDP-11/05 and the PDP-11/10 central processors are electrically the same. Digital Equipment Corporation offers the PDP-11/05 for the Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM). As such it is sold in those configurations and with those services that are convenient for the OEM. The PDP-11/10 is offered for the End User, and is sold in configurations that optimize its use with our small system software. More services and software are included with the PDP-11/10 for the End User.

The central processors are housed in a  $5\frac{1}{4}$ " or  $10\frac{1}{2}$ " high assembly unit that mounts in a standard 19" rack. The PDP-11/05 can accept between 4K and 28K words of memory; the basic PDP-11/10 includes 8K of core memory.

The PDP-11/05 and 11/10 includes as standard items several features that have been unbundled in the PDP-11/04.

- Input/Output computer terminal interface control  
The serial line interface can be used to operate a Teletype, a DEC-writer (LA36, 30 character/sec printer and input keyboard), or an Alphanumeric CRT Terminal (VT50) 240 character/sec display and input keyboard).
- Programmer's Console  
Switches and display for entering and verifying data as well as controlling basic computer operations. There is a Power/Panel Lock switch with a removable key.
- Line Frequency Clock  
An internal timing signal derived from the power source for keeping track of when events happen. (Equivalent to the KW11-L clock option)

### **1.3.3 PDP-11/35 & PDP-11/40**

The PDP-11/35 and the PDP-11/40 central processors are functionally identical. The 11/40 is packaged in a 21" high front panel slide chassis, which in turn is mounted in a standard 72" cabinet, allowing convenient access and expansion. The 11/35 is mounted in a  $10\frac{1}{2}$ " or 21" high slide mounted chassis for compactness. The computers were designed to fit a broad range of applications, from simple situations where the computer consists of only 8K of memory and an I/O device, to large multi-user, multi-task environments requiring up to 124K of core memory. The machines provide a balance between high-speed processing and economy coupled with expandability. The processor assembly is pre-wired to accept a Floating Point option, and a Memory Management option for addressing over 28K of core memory. Memory Management also provides relocation and protection, especially useful in a multi-user operation.

Included with the basic 11/35 & 11/40 are:

- 8K of core memory

- Programmer Console with LED display and removable key for Power/ Panel Lock
- Power supply with excess capacity to drive internal optional equipment
- Prewired mounting space to accept Floating Point and Memory Management hardware options.

#### **1.3.4 PDP-11/45**

The PDP-11/45 is a powerful 16-bit computer designed as a powerful computational tool for high-speed real-time applications and for large multi-user, multi-task applications requiring up to 124K words of addressable memory space. It will operate with solid state and core memories, and includes many features not normally associated with 16-bit computers. Among its major features are a fast central processor with choices of 300 or 495 nanosecond memory, an advanced Floating Point Processor, and a sophisticated memory management scheme.

Included with the basic PDP-11/45 are:

- 16K words of memory
- Choice of bipolar, MOS, and core memory
- Programmer console
- Cabinet
- Prewired mounting space to accept Floating Point and Memory Management hardware

### 1.3.5 Comparison of Computers

|                                  | PDP-11/04 | PDP-11/05 | PDP-11/10 | PDP-11/35    | PDP-11/40    | PDP-11/45                        |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| MAIN MARKET                      | OEM       | OEM       | End User  | OEM          | End User     | End User and OEM                 |
| MICROPROGRAMMED STACK PROCESSING | yes       | yes       | yes       | yes          | yes          | yes                              |
| PROGRAMMABLE STACK LIMIT         | yes       | yes       | yes       | yes          | yes          | yes                              |
| PROGRAMMABLE STACK LIMIT         | no        | no        | no        | opt          | opt          | opt                              |
| GENERAL REGISTERS                | 8         | 8         | 8         | 8            | 8            | 16                               |
| REG-TO-REG TRANSFER              | 2900 nsec | 3100 nsec | 3100 nsec | 900 nsec     | 900 nsec     | 300 nsec                         |
| HARDWARE FLOATING POINT          | no        | no        | no        | 32-bit (opt) | 32-bit (opt) | 32, 64-bit (opt)                 |
| MAX MEMORY SIZE (words)          | 28K       | 28K       | 28K       | 124K         | 124K         | 124K                             |
| MEMORY TYPE                      | MOS       | CORE      | CORE      | CORE         | CORE         | BIPOLAR MOS                      |
| EFFECTIVE MEMORY SPEED           | 725 nsec  | 980 nsec  | 980 nsec  | 980 nsec     | 1000 nsec    | CORE 300 nsec 500 nsec 1000 nsec |
| MEMORY PARITY                    | opt       | no        | no        | opt          | yes          | yes                              |
| MEMORY MANAGEMENT                | no        | no        | no        | opt          | opt          | yes                              |
| PROCESSING MODES                 | 1         | 1         | 1         | 2 (opt)      | 2 (opt)      | 3                                |
| AUTO HARDWARE INTERRUPTS         | yes       | yes       | yes       | yes          | yes          | yes                              |
| AUTO SOFTWARE INTERRUPTS         | no        | no        | no        | no           | no           | yes                              |
| POWER FAIL/AUTO RESTART          | yes       | yes       | yes       | yes          | yes          | yes                              |
| REAL-TIME CLOCK                  | opt       | yes       | yes       | opt          | opt          | yes                              |
| PROGRAMMER'S CONSOLE             | opt       | yes       | yes       | yes          | yes          | yes                              |
| HARDWARE BOOTSTRAP               | yes       | opt       | opt       | opt          | opt          | yes                              |
| SERIAL LINE CONTROLLER           | opt       | yes       | yes       | yes          | yes          | yes                              |

NO = NOT AVAILABLE

YES = IS STANDARD AND IS INCLUDED

OPT = IS OPTIONALLY AVAILABLE



## **1.4 PERIPHERALS/OPTIONS**

Digital Equipment Corporation designs and manufactures many of the peripheral devices offered with PDP-11's. As a designer and manufacturer of peripherals, DIGITAL can offer extremely reliable equipment, lower prices, more choice and quantity discounts.

### **I/O Devices**

All PDP-11 systems can use a Teletype as the basic I/O device. However, I/O capabilities can be increased with high-speed paper tape reader-punches, line printers, card readers or alphanumeric display terminals. The LA36 DECwriter, a totally designed and built teleprinter, can serve as an alternative to the Teletype. It has several advantages over standard electromechanical typewriter terminals, including higher speed, fewer mechanical parts and very quiet operation.

PDP-11 devices include:

- Cassette, TA11
- Floppy disk, RX01
- DECterminal alphanumeric display, VT50
- DECwriter teleprinter, LA36
- High Speed Line Printers, LS11, LP11, LV11
- High Speed Paper Tape Reader and Punch, PC11
- Teletypes, LT33
- Card Readers, CR11, CD11, CM11
- Graphics Terminal, GT40
- Synchronous and Asynchronous Communications Interfaces

### **Storage Devices**

Storage devices range from convenient, small-reel magnetic tape (DEC-tape) units to mass storage magnetic tapes and disk memories. With the UNIBUS, a large number of storage devices, in any combination, may be connected to a PDP-11 system. TU56 DECTapes, highly reliable tape units with small tape reels, designed and built by DEC, are ideal for applications with modest storage requirements. Each DECTape provides storage for 144K 16-bit words. For applications which require handling of large volumes of data, DEC offers the industry compatible TU16 Magtape.

Disk storage include fixed-head disk units and moving-head removable cartridge and disk pack units. These devices range from the 256K word RS03 fixed head disk, to the RP04 Disk Pack which can store up to 44 million words.

## **1.5 SOFTWARE**

The PDP-11 family of central processors and peripherals is supported by a comprehensive family of licensed software products. This software family includes support for small stand-alone configurations, disk based real-time and program development systems, large multi-programming and time-sharing systems, and many diverse dedicated applications. Some examples of general purpose operating systems and standard high level language processors are:

- **PAPER TAPE SYSTEM (PTS-11)**—A core only high-speed paper tape system with program development in assembly language. Editor, debugger, and linker are supplied along with a relocating assembler.
- **CASSETTE PROGRAMMING SYSTEM (CAPS-11)**—A small program development system with a core based monitor, utilizing dual magnetic tape cassettes as file structured media. Complete program development utilities such as a relocating assembler, linker, editor, debugger, and file interchange program are included.
- **SINGLE USER ON-LINE PROGRAM DEVELOPMENT SYSTEM (RT-11)**—A small, powerful, easy-to-use disk (or DECTape) based system for program development or fast on-line (real-time) applications. A Foreground/Background version can accommodate simultaneous program development in the background with on-line applications in the foreground. A MACRO assembler, linker, editor, debugger, and file utility programs are included.
- **MULTI-TASKING PROCESS CONTROL SYSTEM (RSX-11M)**—An efficient multi-tasking system suitable for controlling many processes simultaneously, in a protected environment with concurrent development of new programs. Utilities include a MACRO assembler, task builder (linker), editor, debugger, and file utility programs.
- **COMPREHENSIVE MULTI-PROGRAMMING SYSTEM (RSX-11D)**—The total job operating system. As a compatible extension of RSX-11M, the system allows concurrent fully hardware protected execution of multiple on-line jobs, with BATCH program development. Complete utilities include a MACRO assembler, task builder (linker), editor, debugger, and file utility programs.
- **EXTENDED RESOURCE TIME SHARING SYSTEM (RSTS/E)**—A disk-based time-sharing system implementing BASIC-PLUS, an enriched version of the popular BASIC language. Up to 32 simultaneous users share system resource via interactive terminals. Additional features such as output spooling, and comprehensive file protection are included.
- **INTERACTIVE APPLICATION SYSTEM (IAS)**—A multifunction operating system executing on the larger PDP-11 hardware configurations. It can handle a mix of time-sharing, batch, and real-time applications concurrently. It is also a multi-lingual system, allowing users to choose the high-level language most appropriate for the particular problem at hand.

#### **Languages**

- **BASIC-11**—An extended version of Dartmouth Standard BASIC is available for PTS-11, CAPS-11 and RT-11. Many applications, such as signal processing and graphics are accessed by the user through extensions to this simple, yet powerful, language. A multiuser version is available under PTS-11 and RT-11.
- **PDP-11 FORTRAN IV**—An extended version of ANSI standard FORTRAN is supplied with RSX-11M and RSX-11D, and available under RT-11. As an optimizing compiler, FORTRAN IV is designed for fast compilation, yet requires very little main memory, and generates highly efficient code without sacrificing execution speed. Under RT-11,

FORTRAN IV features the same signal-processing and graphics extensions as BASIC-11.

- **FORTRAN-IV PLUS**—A compatible extension to PDP-11 FORTRAN IV, this system uses sophisticated optimizations to achieve the fastest possible execution speed of the generated code. FORTRAN IV-PLUS requires a PDP-11/45 and Floating Point Processor hardware, in addition to the RSX-11D operating system.
- **PDP-11 COBOL**—To supplement the business data processing needs often associated with large scale PDP-11 system applications, an ANSI-74 COBOL language is available under RSX-11D. Running as a BATCH job, COBOL enhances the RSX-11D total job computing system, where some business data processing is required.

In addition to the above mentioned general purpose licensed software products, DIGITAL offers a great number of optional and applications oriented products. A wide range of educational, consulting, and maintenance services are also offered, to ensure full utility of any PDP-11 system. For a complete and detailed listing of DIGITAL software products and services, consult the latest CATALOG OF SOFTWARE PRODUCTS and SERVICES.

## 1.6 NUMBER SYSTEMS

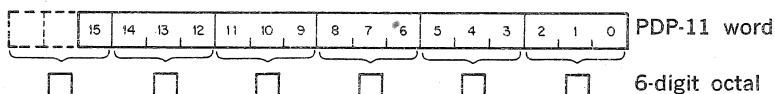
Throughout this Handbook, 3 number systems will be used; octal, binary, and decimal. So as not to clutter all numbers with subscripted bases, the following general convention will be used:

**Octal**—for address locations, contents of addresses, and operation codes for instructions; in most cases there will be words of 6 octal digits

**Binary**—for describing a single binary element; when referring to a PDP-11 word it will be 16 bits long

**Decimal**—for all normal referencing to quantities

### Octal Representation



The 16-bit PDP-11 word can be represented conveniently as a 6-digit octal word. Bit 15, the Most Significant Bit (MSB), is used directly as the Most Significant Digit of the octal word. The other 5 octal digits are formed from the corresponding groups of 3 bits in the binary word.

When an extended address of 18 bits is used (shown later in the Handbook), the Most Significant Digit of the octal word is formed from bits 17, 16, and 15. For unsigned numbers, the correspondence between decimal and octal is:

| Decimal              | Octal  |                |
|----------------------|--------|----------------|
| 0                    | 000000 |                |
| $(2^{16}-1)=65,535$  | 177777 | (16-bit limit) |
| $(2^{18}-1)=262,143$ | 777777 | (18-bit limit) |

## 2's Complement Numbers

In this system, the first bit (bit 15) is used to indicate the sign;

0=positive  
1=negative

For positive numbers, the other 15 bits represent the magnitude directly; for negative numbers, the magnitude is the 2's complement of the remaining 15 bits. (The 2's complement is equal to the 1's complement plus one.) The ordering of numbers is shown below:

| Decimal                  | 2's Complement (Octal) |                |
|--------------------------|------------------------|----------------|
|                          | Sign Bit               | Magnitude Bits |
| largest positive +32,767 | 0                      | 77777          |
| +32,766                  | 0                      | 77776          |
| +1                       | 0                      | 00001          |
| 0                        | 0                      | 00000          |
| -1                       | 1                      | 77777          |
| -2                       | 1                      | 77776          |
| -32,767                  | 1                      | 00001          |
| most negative -32,768    | 1                      | 00000          |



When an extended address of 18 bits is used (shown later in the hand-  
book), the Most Significant Digit of the octal word is formed from the  
17, 16, and 15 for unsigned numbers. The correspondence between  
Decimal and octal is:

Decimal      Octal



## CHAPTER 2

# SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

### 2.1 UNIBUS

Most computer system components and peripherals connect to and communicate with each other on a single high-speed bus known as the UNIBUS—a key to the PDP-11's many strengths. Addresses, data, and control information are sent along the 56 lines of the bus.

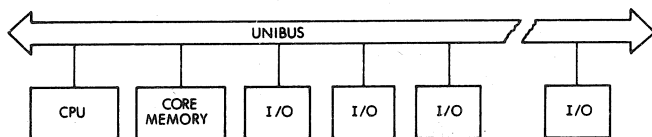


Figure 2-1 PDP-11 System Simplified Block Diagram

The form of communication is the same for every device on the UNIBUS. The processor uses the same set of signals to communicate with memory as with peripheral devices. Peripheral devices also use this set of signals when communicating with the processor, memory or other peripheral devices. Each device, including memory locations, processor registers, and peripheral device registers, is assigned an address on the UNIBUS. Thus, peripheral device registers may be manipulated as flexibly as core memory by the central processor. All the instructions that can be applied to data in core memory can be applied equally well to data in peripheral device registers. This is an especially powerful feature, considering the special capability of PDP-11 instructions to process data in any memory location as though it were an accumulator.

#### 2.1.1 Bidirectional Lines

With bidirectional and asynchronous communications on the UNIBUS, devices can send, receive, and exchange data independently without processor intervention. For example, a cathode ray tube (CRT) display can refresh itself from a disk file while the central processor unit (CPU) attends to other tasks. Because it is asynchronous, the UNIBUS is compatible with devices operating over a wide range of speeds.

#### 2.1.2 Master-Slave Relation

Communication between two devices on the bus is in the form of a master-slave relationship. At any point in time, there is one device that has control of the bus. This controlling device is termed the "bus master." The master device controls the bus when communicating with another device on the bus, termed the "slave." A typical example of this relationship is the processor, as master, fetching an instruction from memory (which is always a slave). Another example is the disk, as

master, transferring data to memory, as slave. Master-slave relationships are dynamic. The processor, for example, may pass bus control to a disk. The disk, as master, could then communicate with a slave memory bank.

Since the UNIBUS is used by the processor and all I/O devices, there is a priority structure to determine which device gets control of the bus. Every device on the UNIBUS which is capable of becoming bus master is assigned a priority. When two devices, which are capable of becoming a bus master, request use of the bus simultaneously, the device with the higher priority will receive control.

### **2.1.3 Interlocked Communication**

Communication on the UNIBUS is interlocked so that for each control signal issued by the master device, there must be a response from the slave in order to complete the transfer. Therefore, communication is independent of the physical bus length (as far as timing is concerned) and the timing of each transfer is dependent only upon the response time of the master and slave devices. The asynchronous operation precludes the need for synchronizing with, and waiting for, clock impulses. Thus, each system is allowed to operate at its maximum possible speed.

Input/output devices transferring directly to or from memory are given highest priority and may request bus mastership and steal bus and memory cycles during instruction operations. The processor resumes operation immediately after the memory transfer. Multiple devices can operate simultaneously at maximum direct memory access (DMA) rates by "stealing" bus cycles.

Full 16-bit words or 8-bit bytes of information can be transferred on the bus between a master and a slave. The information can be instructions, addresses, or data. This type of operation occurs when the processor, as master, is fetching instructions, operands, and data from memory, and storing the results into memory after execution of instructions. Direct data transfers occur between a peripheral device control and memory.

## **2.2 CENTRAL PROCESSOR**

The central processor, connected to the UNIBUS as a subsystem, controls the time allocation of the UNIBUS for peripherals and performs arithmetic and logic operations and instruction decoding. It contains multiple high-speed general-purpose registers which can be used as accumulators, address pointers, index registers, and other specialized functions. The processor can perform data transfers directly between I/O devices and memory without disturbing the processor registers; does both single- and double-operand addressing and handles both 16-bit word and 8-bit byte data.

### **2.2.1 General Registers**

The central processor contains 8 general registers which can be used for a variety of purposes. (The PDP-11/45 contains 16 general

registers.) The registers can be used as accumulators, index registers, autoincrement registers, autodecrement registers, or as stack pointers for temporary storage of data. Chapter 3 on Addressing describes these uses of the general registers in more detail. Arithmetic operations can be from one general register to another, from one memory or device register to another, or between memory or a device register and a general register. Refer to Figure 2-2.

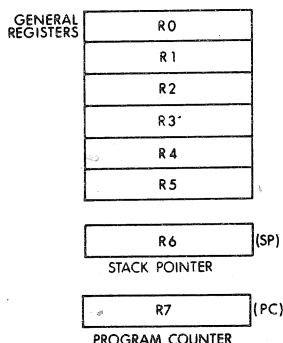


Figure 2-2 The General Registers

R7 is used as the machine's program counter (PC) and contains the address of the next instruction to be executed. It is a general register normally used only for addressing purposes and not as an accumulator for arithmetic operations.

The R6 register is normally used as the Stack Pointer indicating the last entry in the appropriate stack (a common temporary storage area with "Last-in First-Out" characteristics).

### 2.2.2 Instruction Set

The instruction complement uses the flexibility of the general-purpose registers to provide over 400 powerful hard-wired instructions—the most comprehensive and powerful instruction repertoire of any computer in the 16-bit class. Unlike conventional 16-bit computers, which usually have three classes of instructions (memory reference instructions, operate or AC control instructions and I/O instructions) all operations in the PDP-11 are accomplished with one set of instructions. Since peripheral device registers can be manipulated as flexibly as core memory by the central processor, instructions that are used to manipulate data in core memory may be used equally well for data in peripheral device registers. For example, data in an external device register can be tested or modified directly by the CPU, without bringing it into memory or disturbing the general registers. One can add data directly to a peripheral device register, or compare logically or arithmetically. Thus all PDP-11 instructions can be used to create a new dimension in the treatment of computer I/O and the need for a special class of I/O instructions is eliminated.

The basic order code of the PDP-11 uses both single and double operand address instructions for words or bytes. The PDP-11 therefore performs

very efficiently in one step, such operations as adding or subtracting two operands, or moving an operand from one location to another.

### PDP-11 Approach

ADD A,B ;add contents of location A to location B, store results at location B

### Conventional Approach

LDA A ;load contents of memory location A into AC

ADD B ;add contents of memory location B to AC

STA B ;store result at location B

### Addressing

Much of the power of the PDP-11 is derived from its wide range of addressing capabilities. PDP-11 addressing modes include sequential addressing forwards or backwards, addressing indexing, indirect addressing, 16-bit word addressing, 8-bit byte addressing, and stack addressing. Variable length instruction formatting allows a minimum number of bits to be used for each addressing mode. This results in efficient use of program storage space.

### 2.2.3 Processor Status Word

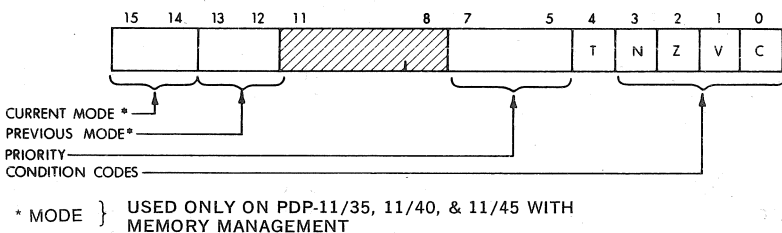


Figure 2-3 Processor Status Word

The Processor Status word (PS), at location 777776, contains information on the current status of the PDP-11. This information includes the current processor priority; current and previous operational modes; the condition codes describing the results of the last instruction; and an indicator for detecting the execution of an instruction to be trapped during program debugging.

### Processor Priority

The Central Processor operates at any one of eight levels of priority, 0-7. When the CPU is operating at level 7 an external device cannot interrupt it with a request for service. The Central Processor must be operating at a lower priority than the external device's request in order for the interruption to take effect. The current priority is maintained in the



processor status word (bits 5-7). The 8 processor levels provide an effective interrupt mask.

### **Condition Codes**

The condition codes contain information on the result of the last CPU operation.

The bits are set as follows:

Z = 1, if the result was zero

N = 1, if the result was negative

C = 1, if the operation resulted in a carry from the MSB

V = 1, if the operation resulted in an arithmetic overflow

### **Trap**

The trap bit (T) can be set or cleared under program control. When set, a processor trap will occur through location 14 on completion of instruction execution and a new Processor Status Word will be loaded. This bit is especially useful for debugging programs as it provides an efficient method of installing breakpoints.

### **2.2.4 Stacks**

In the PDP-11, a stack is a temporary data storage area which allows a program to make efficient use of frequently accessed data. A program can add or delete words or bytes within the stack. The stack uses the "last-in, first-out" concept; that is, various items may be added to a stack in sequential order and retrieved or deleted from the stack in reverse order. On the PDP-11, a stack starts at the highest location reserved for it and expands linearly downward to the lowest address as items are added. The stack is used automatically by program interrupts, subroutine calls, and trap instructions. When the processor is interrupted, the central processor status word and the program counter are saved (pushed) onto the stack area, while the processor services the interrupting device. A new status word is then automatically acquired from an area in core memory which is reserved for interrupt instructions (vector area). A return from the interrupt instruction restores the original processor status and returns to the interrupted program without software intervention.

## 2.3 MEMORY

### Memory Organization

A memory can be viewed as a series of locations, with a number (address) assigned to each location. Thus an 8,192-word PDP-11 memory could be shown as in Figure 2-4.

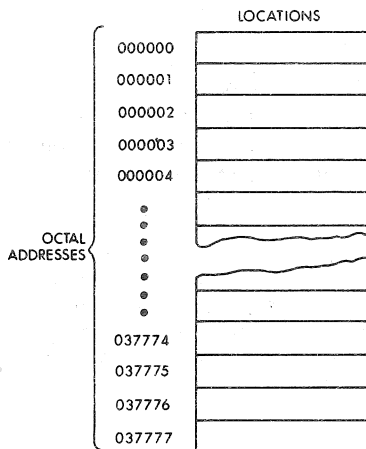


Figure 2-4 Memory Addresses

Because PDP-11 memories are designed to accommodate both 16-bit words and 8-bit bytes, the total number of addresses does not correspond to the number of words. An 8K-word memory can contain 16K bytes and consist of 037777 octal locations. Words always start at even-numbered locations.

A PDP-11 word is divided into a high byte and a low byte as shown in Figure 2-5.

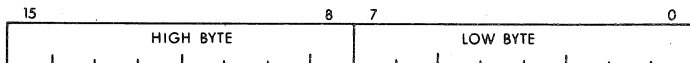


Figure 2-5 High & Low Byte

Low bytes are stored at even-numbered memory locations and high bytes at odd-numbered memory locations. Thus it is convenient to view the PDP-11 memory as shown in Figure 2-6.



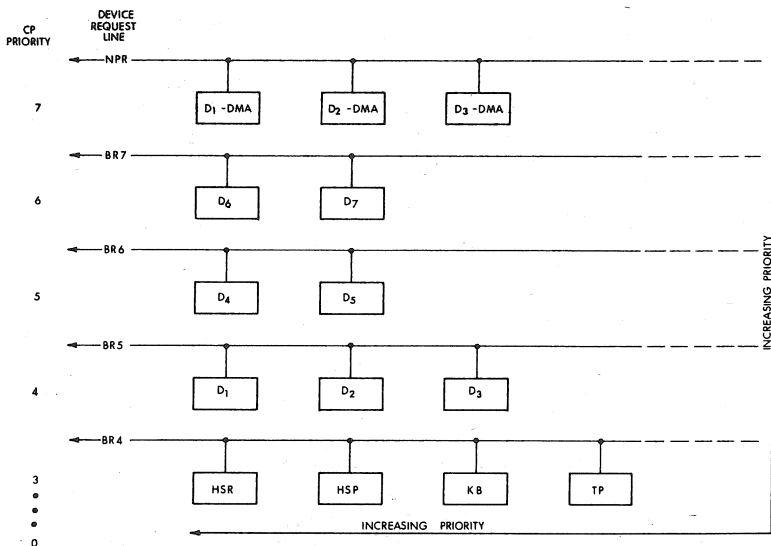


Figure 2-7 UNIBUS Priority

Each peripheral device in the PDP-11 system has a pointer to its own pair of memory words (one points to the device's service routine, and the other contains the new processor status information). This unique identification eliminates the need for polling of devices to identify an interrupt, since the interrupt service hardware selects and begins executing the appropriate service routine after having automatically saved the status of the interrupted program segment.

The devices' interrupt priority and service routine priority are independent. This allows adjustment of system behavior in response to real-time conditions, by dynamically changing the priority level of the service routine.

The interrupt system allows the processor to continually compare its own programmable priority with the priority of any interrupting devices and to acknowledge the device with the highest level above the processor's priority level. The servicing of an interrupt for a device can be interrupted in order to service an interrupt of a higher priority. Service to the lower priority device is resumed automatically upon completion of the higher level servicing. Such a process, called nested interrupt servicing, can be carried out to any level without requiring the software to save and restore processor status at each level.

When a device (other than the central processor) is capable of becoming bus master and requests use of the bus, it is generally for one of two purposes:

1. To make a non-processor transfer of data directly to or from memory

2. To interrupt a program execution and force the processor to go to a specific address where an interrupt service routine is located.

### **Direct Memory Access**

All PDP-11's provide for direct access to memory. Any number of DMA devices may be attached to the UNIBUS. Maximum priority is given to DMA devices, thus allowing memory data storage or retrieval at memory cycle speeds. Response time is minimized by the organization and logic of the UNIBUS, which samples requests and priorities in parallel with data transfers.

Direct memory or direct data transfers can be accomplished between any two peripherals without processor supervision. These non-processor request transfers, called NPR level data transfers, are usually made for Direct Memory Access (memory to/from mass storage) or direct device transfers (disk refreshing a CRT display).

### **Bus Requests**

Bus requests from external devices can be made on one of five request lines. Highest priority is assigned to non-processor request (NPR). These are direct memory access type transfers, and are honored by the processor between bus cycles of an instruction execution.

The processor's priority can be set under program control to one of eight levels using bits 7, 6, and 5 in the processor status register. These bits set a priority level that inhibits granting of bus requests on lower levels or on the same level. When the processor's priority is set to a level, for example PS6, all bus requests on BR6 and below are ignored.

When more than one device is connected to the same bus request (BR) line, a device nearer the central processor has a higher priority than a device farther away. Any number of devices can be connected to a given BR or NPR line.

Thus the priority system is two-dimensional and provides each device with a unique priority. Each device may be dynamically, selectively enabled or disabled under program control.

Once a device other than the processor has control of the bus, it may do one of two types of operations: data transfers or interrupt operations.

### **NPR Data Transfers**

NPR data transfers can be made between any two peripheral devices without the supervision of the processor. Normally, NPR transfers are between a mass storage device, such as a disk, and core memory. The structure of the bus also permits device-to-device transfers, allowing customer-designed peripheral controllers to access other devices, such as disks, directly.

An NPR device has very fast access to the bus and can transfer at high data rates once it has control. The processor state is not affected by the transfer; therefore the processor can relinquish control while an instruction is in progress. This can occur at the end of any bus cycles

except in between a read-modify-write sequence. An NPR device in control of the bus may transfer 16-bit words from memory at memory speed.

### **BR Transfers**

Devices that gain bus control with one of the Bus Request lines (BR 7-BR4) can take full advantage of the Central Processor by requesting an interrupt. In this way, the entire instruction set is available for manipulating data and status registers.

When a service routine is to be run, the current task being performed by the central processor is interrupted, and the device service routine is initiated. Once the request has been satisfied, the Processor returns to its former task.

### **Interrupt Procedure**

Interrupt handling is automatic in the PDP-11. No device polling is required to determine which service routine to execute. The operations required to service an interrupt are as follows:

1. Processor relinquishes control of the bus, priorities permitting.
2. When a master gains control, it sends the processor an interrupt command and an unique memory address which contains the address of the device's service routine, called the interrupt vector address. Immediately following this pointer address is a word (located at vector address +2) which is to be used as a new Processor Status Word.
3. The processor stores the current Processor Status (PS) and the current Program Counter (PC) into CPU temporary registers.
4. The new PC and PS (interrupt vector) are taken from the specified address. The old PS and PC are then pushed onto the current stack. The service routine is then initiated.
5. The device service routine can cause the processor to resume the interrupted process by executing the Return from Interrupt instruction, described in Chapter 4, which pops the two top words from the current processor stack and uses them to load the PC and PS registers.

A device routine can be interrupted by a higher priority bus request any time after the new PC and PS have been loaded. If such an interrupt occurs, the PC and PS of the service routine are automatically stored in the temporary registers and then pushed onto the new current stack, and the new device routine is initiated.

### **Interrupt Servicing**

Every hardware device capable of interrupting the processor has a unique set of locations (2 words) reserved for its interrupt vector. The first word contains the location of the device's service routine, and the second, the Processor Status Word that is to be used by the service routine. Through

proper use of the PS, the programmer can switch the operational mode of the processor, and modify the Processor's Priority level to mask out lower level interrupts.

#### **Reentrant Code**

Both the interrupt handling hardware and the subroutine call hardware facilitate writing reentrant code for the PDP-11. This type of code allows a single copy of a given subroutine or program to be shared by more than one process or task. This reduces the amount of core needed for multi-task applications such as the concurrent servicing of many peripheral devices.

#### **Power Fail and Restart**

Whenever AC power drops below 95 volts for 110v power (190 volts for 220v) or outside a limit of 47 to 63 Hz, as measured by DC power, the power fail sequence is initiated. The Central Processor automatically traps to location 24 and the power fail program has 2 msec. to save all volatile information (data in registers), and to condition peripherals for power fail.

When power is restored the processor traps to location 24 and executes the power up routine to restore the machine to its state prior to power failure.





### ADDRESSING MODES

Data stored in memory must be accessed, and manipulated. Data handling is specified by a PDP-11 instruction (MOV, ADD etc.) which usually indicates:

- the function (operation code)

- a general purpose register to be used when locating the source operand and/or a general purpose register to be used when locating the destination operand.

- an addressing mode (to specify how the selected register(s) is/are to be used)

Since a large portion of the data handled by a computer is usually structured (in character strings, in arrays, in lists etc.), the PDP-11 has been designed to handle structured data efficiently and flexibly. The general registers may be used with an instruction in any of the following ways:

- as accumulators. The data to be manipulated resides within the register.

- as pointers. The contents of the register are the address of the operand, rather than the operand itself.

- as pointers which automatically step through core locations. Automatically stepping forward through consecutive core locations is known as autoincrement addressing; automatically stepping backwards is known as autodecrement addressing. These modes are particularly useful for processing tabular data.

- as index registers. In this instance the contents of the register, and the word following the instruction are summed to produce the address of the operand. This allows easy access to variable entries in a list.

PDP-11's also have instruction addressing mode combinations which facilitate temporary data storage structures for convenient handling of data which must be frequently accessed. This is known as the "stack."

In the PDP-11 any register can be used as a "stack pointer" under program control, however, certain instructions associated with subroutine linkage and interrupt service automatically use Register 6 as a "hardware stack pointer". For this reason R6 is frequently referred to as the "SP"

R7 is used by the processor as its program counter (PC). It is recommended that R7 not be used as a stack pointer.

An important PDP-11 feature, which must be considered in conjunction with the addressing modes, is the register arrangement;

Six general purpose registers, (R0-R5)

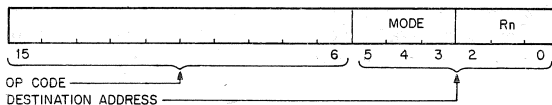
A hardware Stack Pointer (SP), register (R6)

A Program Counter (PC), register (R7).

Instruction mnemonics and address mode symbols are sufficient for writing machine language programs. The programmer need not be concerned about conversion to binary digits; this is accomplished automatically by the PDP-11 MACRO Assembler.

### 3.1 SINGLE OPERAND ADDRESSING

The instruction format for all single operand instructions (such as clear, increment, test) is:



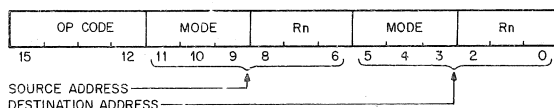
Bits 15 through 6 specify the operation code that defines the type of instruction to be executed.

Bits 5 through 0 form a six-bit field called the destination address field. This consists of two subfields:

- Bits 0 through 2 specify which of the eight general purpose registers is to be referenced by this instruction word.
- Bits 3 through 5 specify how the selected register will be used (address mode). Bit 3 is set to indicate deferred (indirect) addressing.

### 3.2 DOUBLE OPERAND ADDRESSING

Operations which imply two operands (such as add, subtract, move and compare) are handled by instructions that specify two addresses. The first operand is called the source operand, the second the destination operand. Bit assignments in the source and destination address fields may specify different modes and different registers. The instruction format for the double operand instruction is:



The source address field is used to select the source operand, the first operand. The destination is used similarly, and locates the second operand and the result. For example, the instruction ADD A, B adds the contents (source operand) of location A to the contents (destination operand) of location B. After execution B will contain the result of the addition and the contents of A will be unchanged.

Examples in this section and further in this chapter use the following sample PDP-11 instructions:

| Mnemonic | Description                                                                                                                              | Octal Code |
|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| CLR      | clear (zero the specified destination)                                                                                                   | 0050DD     |
| CLRB     | clear byte (zero the byte in the specified destination)                                                                                  | 1050DD     |
| INC      | increment (add 1 to contents of destination)                                                                                             | 0052DD     |
| INCB     | increment byte (add 1 to the contents of destination byte)                                                                               | 1052DD     |
| COM      | complement (replace the contents of the destination by their logical complement; each 0 bit is set and each 1 bit is cleared)            | 0051DD     |
| COMB     | complement byte (replace the contents of the destination byte by their logical complement; each 0 bit is set and each 1 bit is cleared). | 1051DD     |
| ADD      | add (add source operand to destination operand and store the result at destination address)                                              | 06SSDD     |

DD = destination field (6 bits)

SS = source field (6 bits)

( ) = contents of

### 3.3 DIRECT ADDRESSING

The following table summarizes the four basic modes used with direct addressing.

#### DIRECT MODES

| Mode | Name          | Assembler Syntax | Function                                                                                 |
|------|---------------|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | Register      | Rn               | Register contains operand                                                                |
| 2    | Autoincrement | (Rn) +           | Register is used as a pointer to sequential data then incremented                        |
| 4    | Autodecrement | -(Rn)            | Register is decremented and then used as a pointer.                                      |
| 6    | Index         | X(Rn)            | Value X is added to (Rn) to produce address of operand. Neither X nor (Rn) are modified. |

#### 3.3.1 Register Mode

##### OPR Rn

With register mode any of the general registers may be used as simple accumulators and the operand is contained in the selected register. Since they are hardware registers, within the processor, the general registers operate at high speeds and provide speed advantages when used for operating on frequently-accessed variables. The PDP-11 assembler interprets and assembles instructions of the form OPR Rn as register mode operations. Rn represents a general register name or number and OPR is used to represent a general instruction mnemonic. Assembler syntax requires that a general register be defined as follows:

R0 = %0 (% sign indicates register definition)

R1 = %1

R2 = %2, etc.

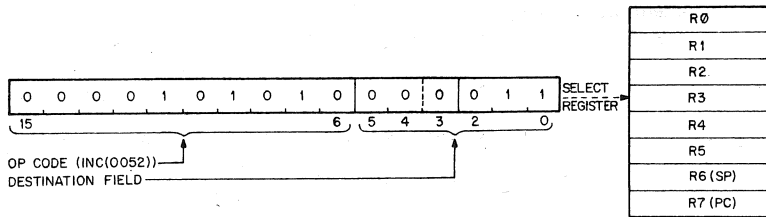
Registers are typically referred to by name as R0, R1, R2, R3, R4, R5, R6 and R7. However R6 and R7 are also referred to as SP and PC, respectively.

#### Register Mode Examples

(all numbers in octal)

|    | Symbolic | Octal Code | Instruction Name |
|----|----------|------------|------------------|
| 1. | INC R3   | 005203     | Increment        |

Operation: Add one to the contents of general register 3



2. ADD R2,R4 060204 Add

Operation: Add the contents of R2 to the contents of R4.

|        |        |       |        |
|--------|--------|-------|--------|
| BEFORE |        | AFTER |        |
| R2     | 000002 | R2    | 000002 |
| R4     | 000004 | R4    | 000006 |

3. COMB R4 105104 Complement Byte

Operation: One's complement bits 0-7 (byte) in R4. (When general registers are used, byte instructions only operate on bits 0-7; i.e. byte 0 of the register)

|        |        |       |        |
|--------|--------|-------|--------|
| BEFORE |        | AFTER |        |
| R4     | 022222 | R4    | 022155 |

### 3.3.2 Autoincrement Mode

OPR (Rn) +

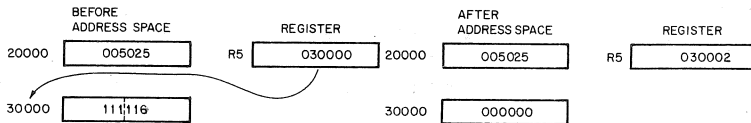
This mode provides for automatic stepping of a pointer through sequential elements of a table of operands. It assumes the contents of the selected general register to be the address of the operand. Contents of registers are stepped (by one for bytes, by two for words, always by two for R6 and R7) to address the next sequential location. The autoincrement mode is especially useful for array processing and stacks. It will access an element of a table and then step the pointer to address the next operand in the table. Although most useful for table handling, this mode is completely general and may be used for a variety of purposes.

### Autoincrement Mode Examples

Symbolic      Octal Code      Instruction Name

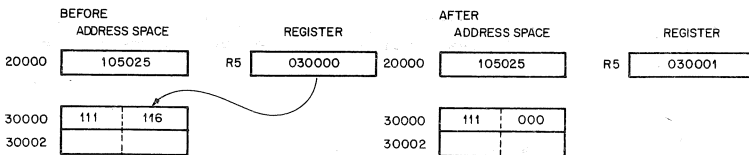
1.      CLR (R5) +      005025      Clear

Operation:      Use contents of R5 as the address of the operand. Clear selected operand and then increment the contents of R5 by two.



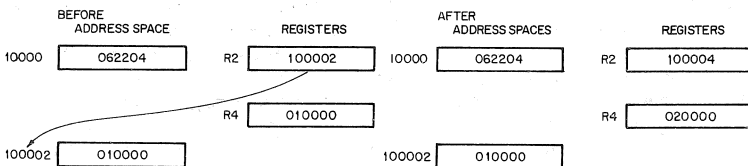
2.      CLRB (R5) +      105025      Clear Byte

Operation:      Use contents of R5 as the address of the operand. Clear selected byte operand and then increment the contents of R5 by one.



3.      ADD (R2) + ,R4      062204      Add

Operation:      The contents of R2 are used as the address of the operand which is added to the contents of R4. R2 is then incremented by two.



### 3.3.3 Autodecrement Mode

OPR-(Rn)

This mode is useful for processing data in a list in reverse direction. The contents of the selected general register are decremented (by two for word instructions, by one for byte instructions) and then used as the address of the operand. The choice of postincrement, predecrement features for the PDP-11 were not arbitrary decisions, but were intended to facilitate hardware/software stack operations.

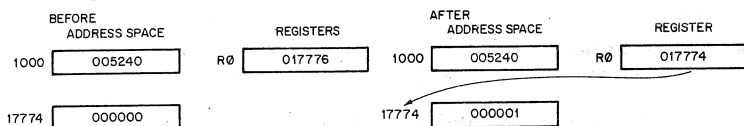
#### Autodecrement Mode Examples

Symbolic      Octal Code      Instruction Name

1.      INC-(R0)      005240      Increment

Operation:

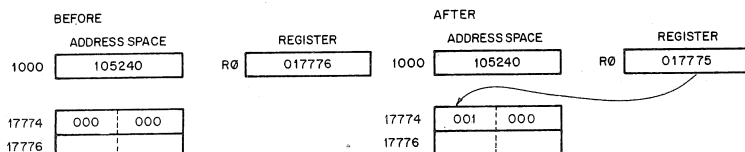
The contents of R0 are decremented by two and used as the address of the operand. The operand is increased by one.



2.      INCB-(R0)      105240      Increment Byte

Operation:

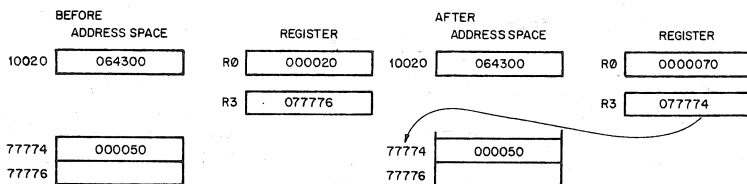
The contents of R0 are decremented by one then used as the address of the operand. The operand byte is increased by one.



3.      ADD-(R3),R0      064300      Add

Operation:

The contents of R3 are decremented by 2 then used as a pointer to an operand (source) which is added to the contents of R0 (destination operand).



### 3.3.4 Index Mode

#### OPR X(Rn)

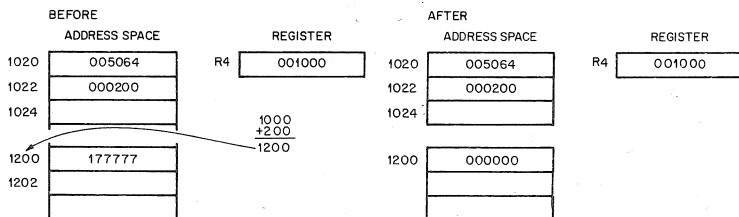
The contents of the selected general register, and an index word following the instruction word, are summed to form the address of the operand. The contents of the selected register may be used as a base for calculating a series of addresses, thus allowing random access to elements of data structures. The selected register can then be modified by program to access data in the table. Index addressing instructions are of the form OPR X(Rn) where X is the indexed word and is located in the memory location following the instruction word and Rn is the selected general register.

#### Index Mode Examples

|    | Symbolic    | Octal Code       | Instruction Name |
|----|-------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. | CLR 200(R4) | 005064<br>000200 | Clear            |

Operation:

The address of the operand is determined by adding 200 to the contents of R4. The location is then cleared.



|    |              |                  |                 |
|----|--------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 2. | COMB 200(R1) | 105161<br>000200 | Complement Byte |
|----|--------------|------------------|-----------------|

Operation:

The contents of a location which is determined by adding 200 to the contents of R1 are one's complemented. (i.e. logically complemented)





### 3.4 DEFERRED (INDIRECT) ADDRESSING

The four basic modes may also be used with deferred addressing. Whereas in the register mode the operand is the contents of the selected register, in the register deferred mode the contents of the selected register is the address of the operand.

In the three other deferred modes, the contents of the register selects the address of the operand rather than the operand itself. These modes are therefore used when a table consists of addresses rather than operands. Assembler syntax for indicating deferred addressing is "@" (or "(" ) when this is not ambiguous). The following table summarizes the deferred versions of the basic modes:

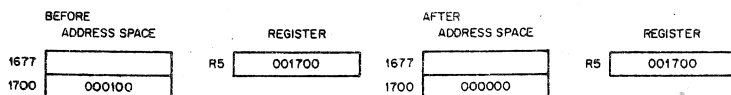
| Mode | Name                   | Assembler Syntax | Function                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------|------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | Register Deferred      | @Rn or (Rn)      | Register contains the address of the operand                                                                                                                                               |
| 3    | Autoincrement Deferred | @(Rn) +          | Register is first used as a pointer to a word containing the address of the operand, then incremented (always by 2; even for byte instructions).                                           |
| 5    | Autodecrement Deferred | @-(Rn)           | Register is decremented (always by two; even for byte instructions) and then used as a pointer to a word containing the address of the operand                                             |
| 7    | Index Deferred         | @X(Rn)           | Value X (stored in a word following the instruction) and (Rn) are added and the sum is used as a pointer to a word containing the address of the operand. Neither X nor (Rn) are modified. |

Since each deferred mode is similar to its basic mode counterpart, separate descriptions of each deferred mode are not necessary. However, the following examples illustrate the deferred modes.

#### Register Deferred Mode Example

| Symbolic | Octal Code | Instruction Name |
|----------|------------|------------------|
| CLR @R5  | 005015     | Clear            |

Operation: The contents of location specified in R5 are cleared.

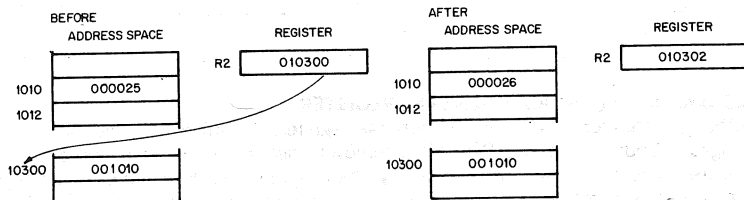


### Autoincrement Deferred Mode Example

| Symbolic   | Octal Code | Instruction Name |
|------------|------------|------------------|
| INC@(R2) + | 005232     | Increment        |

Operation:

The contents of R2 are used as the address of the address of the operand.  
Operand is increased by one. Contents of R2 is incremented by 2.

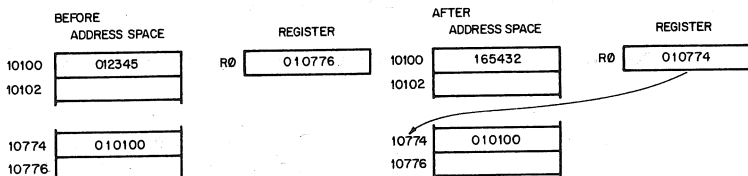


### Autodecrement Deferred Mode Example

| Symbolic   | Octal Code | Complement |
|------------|------------|------------|
| COM @-(R0) | 005150     |            |

Operation:

The contents of R0 are decremented by two and then used as the address of the address of the operand. Operand is one's complemented. (i.e. logically complemented)

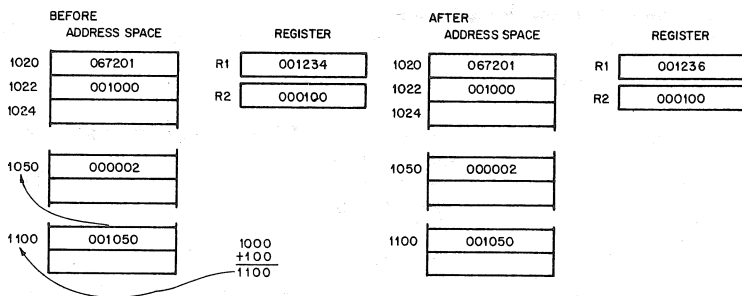


### Index Deferred Mode Example

| Symbolic          | Octal Code       | Instruction Name |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| ADD @ 1000(R2),R1 | 067201<br>001000 | Add              |

Operation:

1000 and contents of R2 are summed to produce the address of the address of the source operand the contents of which are added to contents of R1; the result is stored in R1.



### 3.5 USE OF THE PC AS A GENERAL REGISTER

Although Register 7 is a general purpose register, it doubles in function as the Program Counter for the PDP-11. Whenever the processor uses the program counter to acquire a word from memory, the program counter is automatically incremented by two to contain the address of the next word of the instruction being executed or the address of the next instruction to be executed. (When the program uses the PC to locate byte data, the PC is still incremented by two.)

The PC responds to all the standard PDP-11 addressing modes. However, there are four of these modes with which the PC can provide advantages for handling position independent code (PIC - see Chapter 5) and unstructured data. When regarding the PC these modes are termed immediate, absolute (or immediate deferred), relative and relative deferred, and are summarized below:

| Mode | Name              | Assembler Syntax | Function                                                                                                           |
|------|-------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2    | Immediate         | #n               | Operand follows instruction                                                                                        |
| 3    | Absolute          | @ #A             | Absolute Address follows instruction                                                                               |
| 6    | Relative          | A                | Relative Address (index value) follows the instruction.                                                            |
| 7    | Relative Deferred | @A               | Index value (stored in the word following the instruction) is the relative address for the address of the operand. |

The reader should remember that the special effect modes are the same as modes described in 3.3 and 3.4, but the general register selected is R7, the program counter.

When a standard program is available for different users, it often is helpful to be able to load it into different areas of core and run it there. PDP-11's can accomplish the relocation of a program very efficiently through the use of position inde-

pendent code (PIC) which is written by using the PC addressing modes. If an instruction and its objects are moved in such a way that the relative distance between them is not altered, the same offset relative to the PC can be used in all positions in memory. Thus, PIC usually references locations relative to the current location. PIC is discussed in more detail in Chapter 5.

The PC also greatly facilitates the handling of unstructured data. This is particularly true of the immediate and relative modes.

### 3.5.1 Immediate Mode

OPR #n,DD

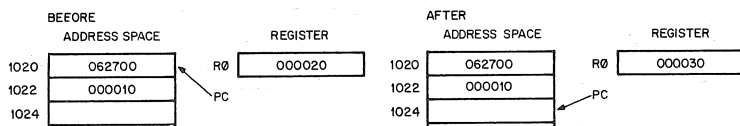
Immediate mode is equivalent to using the autoincrement mode with the PC. It provides time improvements for accessing constant operands by including the constant in the memory location immediately following the instruction word.

#### Immediate Mode Example

| Symbolic   | Octal Code       | Instruction Name |
|------------|------------------|------------------|
| ADD #10,R0 | 062700<br>000010 | Add              |

Operation:

The value 10 is located in the second word of the instruction and is added to the contents of R0. Just before this instruction is fetched and executed, the PC points to the first word of the instruction. The processor fetches the first word and increments the PC by two. The source operand mode is 27 (autoincrement the PC). Thus, the PC is used as a pointer to fetch the operand (the second word of the instruction) before being incremented by two to point to the next instruction.



### 3.5.2 Absolute Addressing

OPR @ #A

This mode is the equivalent of immediate deferred or autoincrement deferred using the PC. The contents of the location following the instruction are taken as the address of the operand. Immediate data is interpreted as an absolute address (i.e., an address that remains constant no matter where in memory the assembled instruction is executed).

### Absolute Mode Examples

Symbolic

Octal Code

Instruction Name

1. CLR @ # 1100

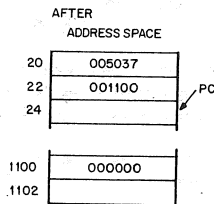
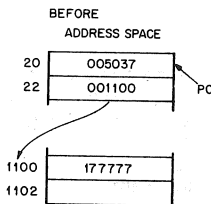
005037

Clear

001100

Operation:

Clear the contents of location 1100.

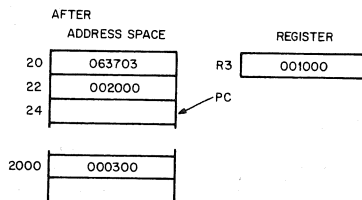
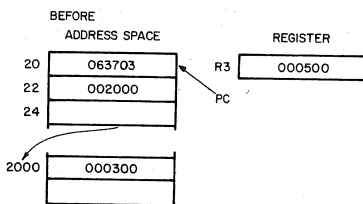


2. ADD @ # 2000,R3 063703

002000

Operation:

Add contents of location 2000 to R3.



### 3.5.3 Relative Addressing

OPR A or OPR X(PC)  
where X is the location of A relative to the instruction.

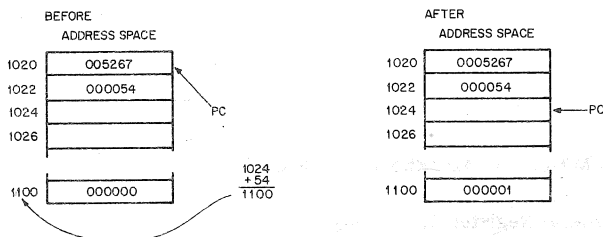
This mode is assembled as index mode using R7. The base of the address calculation, which is stored in the second or third word of the instruction, is not the address of the operand, but the number which, when added to the (PC), becomes the address of the operand. This mode is useful for writing position independent code (see Chapter 5) since the location referenced is always fixed relative to the PC. When instructions are to be relocated, the operand is moved by the same amount.

### Relative Addressing Example

| Symbolic | Octal Code       | Instruction Name |
|----------|------------------|------------------|
| INC A    | 005267<br>000054 | Increment        |

Operation:

To increment location A, contents of memory location immediately following instruction word are added to (PC) to produce address A. Contents of A are increased by one.



### 3.5.4 Relative Deferred Addressing

OPR@A or OPR@X(PC), where x is location containing address of A, relative to the instruction.

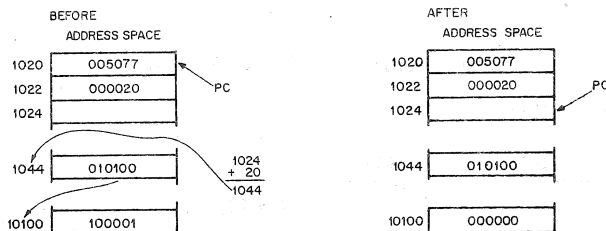
This mode is similar to the relative mode, except that the second word of the instruction, when added to the PC, contains the address of the address of the operand, rather than the address of the operand.

#### Relative Deferred Mode Example

| Symbolic | Octal Code       | Instruction Name |
|----------|------------------|------------------|
| CLR @A   | 005077<br>000020 | Clear            |

Operation:

Add second word of instruction to PC to produce address of address of operand. Clear operand.



### 3.6 USE OF STACK POINTER AS GENERAL REGISTER

The processor stack pointer (SP, Register 6) is in most cases the general register used for the stack operations related to program nesting. Auto-decrement with Register 6 "pushes" data on to the stack and autoincrement with Register 6 "pops" data off the stack. Index mode with SP permits random access of items on the stack. Since the SP is used by the processor for interrupt handling, it has a special attribute: autoincrements and autodecrements are always done in steps of two. Byte operations using the SP in this way leave odd addresses unmodified.

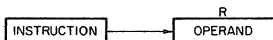
### 3.7 SUMMARY OF ADDRESSING MODES

#### 3.7.1 General Register Addressing

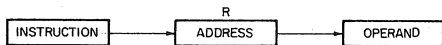
R is a general register, 0 to 7

(R) is the contents of that register

**Mode 0**                      **Register**                      OPR R                      R contains operand

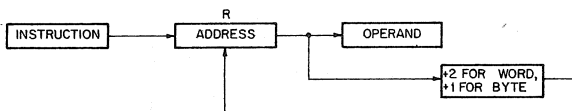


**Mode 1**                      **Register deferred**                      OPR (R)                      R contains address



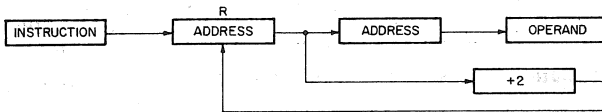
**Mode 2**                      **Auto-increment**                      OPR (R)+

R contains address, then increment (R)

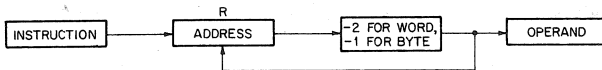




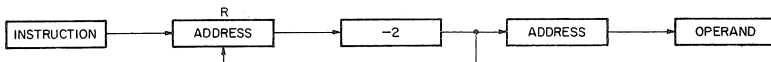
**Mode 3 Auto-increment deferred** OPR  $@(R)+$  R contains address of address, then increment (R) by 2



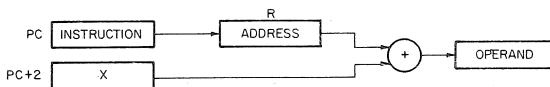
**Mode 4 Auto-decrement** OPR  $-(R)$   
Decrement (R), then R contains address



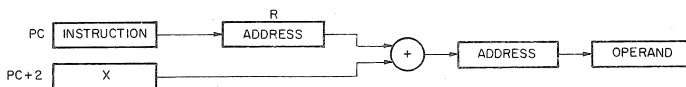
**Mode 5 Auto-decrement deferred** OPR  $@-(R)$  Decrement (R) by 2, then R contains address of address



**Mode 6 Index** OPR  $X(R)$  (R) + X is address



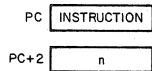
**Mode 7 Index deferred** OPR  $@X(R)$  (R) + X is address of address



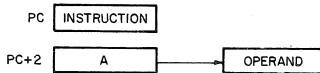
### 3.7.2 Program Counter Addressing

Register = 7

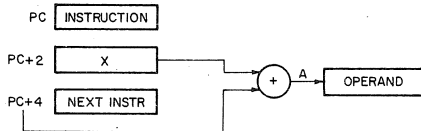
**Mode 2 Immediate**      OPR #n      Operand n follows instruction



**Mode 3 Absolute**      OPR @ #A      Address A follows instruction

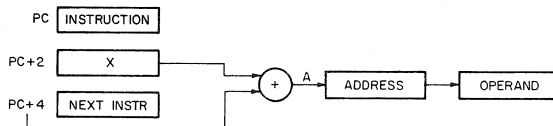


**Mode 6 Relative**      OPR A       $\underbrace{PC + 4 + X}_{\text{updated PC}}$  is address



**Mode 7 Relative deferred**      OPR @A

$\underbrace{PC + 4 + X}_{\text{updated PC}}$  is address of address



## CHAPTER 4

# INSTRUCTION SET

### 4.1 INTRODUCTION

The specification for each instruction includes the mnemonic, octal code, binary code, a diagram showing the format of the instruction, a symbolic notation describing its execution and the effect on the condition codes, a description, special comments, and examples.

**MNEMONIC:** This is indicated at the top corner of each page. When the word instruction has a byte equivalent, the byte mnemonic is also shown.

**INSTRUCTION FORMAT:** A diagram accompanying each instruction shows the octal op code, the binary op code, and bit assignments. (Note that in byte instructions the most significant bit (bit 15) is always a 1.)

#### SYMBOLS:

( ) = contents of

SS or src = source address

DD or dst = destination address

loc = location

$\leftarrow$  = becomes

$\uparrow$  = "is popped from stack"

$\downarrow$  = "is pushed onto stack"

$\Delta$  = boolean AND

$\vee$  = boolean OR

$\nabla$  = exclusive OR

$\sim$  = boolean not

Reg or R = register

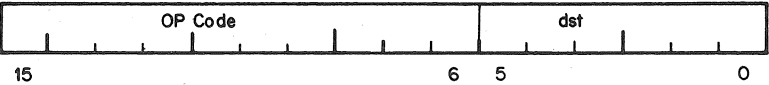
B = Byte

$\blacksquare = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for word} \\ 1 & \text{for byte} \end{cases}$

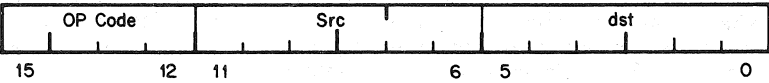
4.2 INSTRUCTION FORMATS

The major instruction formats are:

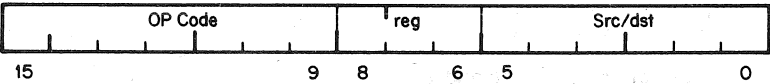
Single Operand Group



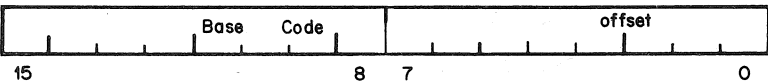
Double Operand Group



Register-Source or Destination



Branch



### Byte Instructions

The PDP-11 processor includes a full complement of instructions that manipulate byte operands. Since all PDP-11 addressing is byte-oriented, byte manipulation addressing is straightforward. Byte instructions with autoincrement or autodecrement direct addressing cause the specified register to be modified by one to point to the next byte of data. Byte operations in register mode access the low-order byte of the specified register. These provisions enable the PDP-11 to perform as either a word or byte processor. The numbering scheme for word and byte addresses in core memory is:

| HIGH BYTE ADDRESS |        |        | WORD OR BYTE ADDRESS |
|-------------------|--------|--------|----------------------|
| 002001            | BYTE 1 | BYTE 0 | 002000               |
| 002003            | BYTE 3 | BYTE 2 | 002002               |
|                   |        |        |                      |
|                   |        |        |                      |
|                   |        |        |                      |
|                   |        |        |                      |
|                   |        |        |                      |

The most significant bit (Bit 15) of the instruction word is set to indicate a byte instruction.

Example:

| Symbolic | Octal  |            |
|----------|--------|------------|
| CLR      | 0050DD | Clear Word |
| CLRB     | 1050DD | Clear Byte |

### NOTE

The term PC (Program Counter) in the **Operation** explanation of the instructions refers to the updated PC.

### 4.3 LIST OF INSTRUCTIONS

Instructions are shown in the following sequence. Other instructions are found in Chapters 9, 11, and 12.

▲—The SXT, XOR, MARK, SOB, and RTT instructions are not implemented in the PDP-11/04, 11/05, and 11/10.

\*—The SPL instruction is implemented only in the PDP-11/45.

#### SINGLE OPERAND

| Mnemonic                  | Instruction                  | Op Code | Page |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|---------|------|
| <b>General</b>            |                              |         |      |
| CLR(B)                    | clear destination .....      | ■050DD  | 4-6  |
| COM(B)                    | complement dst .....         | ■051DD  | 4-7  |
| INC(B)                    | increment dst .....          | ■052DD  | 4-8  |
| DEC(B)                    | decrement dst .....          | ■053DD  | 4-9  |
| NEG(B)                    | negate dst .....             | ■054DD  | 4-10 |
| TST(B)                    | test dst .....               | ■057DD  | 4-11 |
| <b>Shift &amp; Rotate</b> |                              |         |      |
| ASR(B)                    | arithmetic shift right ..... | ■062DD  | 4-13 |
| ASL(B)                    | arithmetic shift left .....  | ■063DD  | 4-14 |
| ROR(B)                    | rotate right .....           | ■060DD  | 4-15 |
| ROL(B)                    | rotate left .....            | ■061DD  | 4-16 |
| SWAB                      | swap bytes .....             | 0003DD  | 4-17 |
| <b>Multiple Precision</b> |                              |         |      |
| ADC(B)                    | add carry .....              | ■055DD  | 4-19 |
| SBC(B)                    | subtract carry .....         | ■056DD  | 4-20 |
| ▲ SXT                     | sign extend .....            | 0067DD  | 4-21 |

#### DOUBLE OPERAND

|                |                                  |        |      |
|----------------|----------------------------------|--------|------|
| <b>General</b> |                                  |        |      |
| MOV(B)         | move source to destination ..... | ■1SSDD | 4-23 |
| CMP(B)         | compare src to dst .....         | ■2SSDD | 4-24 |
| ADD            | add src to dst .....             | 06SSDD | 4-25 |
| SUB            | subtract src from dst .....      | 16SSDD | 4-26 |
| <b>Logical</b> |                                  |        |      |
| BIT(B)         | bit test .....                   | ■3SSDD | 4-28 |
| BIC(B)         | bit clear .....                  | ■4SSDD | 4-29 |
| BIS(B)         | bit set .....                    | ■5SSDD | 4-30 |
| ▲ XOR          | exclusive OR .....               | 074RDD | 4-31 |

## PROGRAM CONTROL

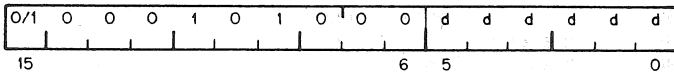
| Mnemonic                           | Instruction                                        | Op Code<br>or<br>Base Code | Page |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|------|
| <b>Branch</b>                      |                                                    |                            |      |
| BR                                 | branch (unconditional) .....                       | 000400                     | 4-33 |
| BNE                                | branch if not equal (to zero) .....                | 001000                     | 4-34 |
| BEQ                                | branch if equal (to zero) .....                    | 001400                     | 4-35 |
| BPL                                | branch if plus .....                               | 100000                     | 4-36 |
| BMI                                | branch if minus .....                              | 100400                     | 4-37 |
| BVC                                | branch if overflow is clear .....                  | 102000                     | 4-38 |
| BVS                                | branch if overflow is set .....                    | 102400                     | 4-39 |
| BCC                                | branch if carry is clear .....                     | 103000                     | 4-40 |
| BCS                                | branch if carry is set .....                       | 103400                     | 4-41 |
| <b>Signed Conditional Branch</b>   |                                                    |                            |      |
| BGE                                | branch if greater than or equal<br>(to zero) ..... | 002000                     | 4-43 |
| BLT                                | branch if less than (zero) .....                   | 002400                     | 4-44 |
| BGT                                | branch if greater than (zero) .....                | 003000                     | 4-45 |
| BLE                                | branch if less than or equal (to zero)....         | 003400                     | 4-46 |
| <b>Unsigned Conditional Branch</b> |                                                    |                            |      |
| BHI                                | branch if higher .....                             | 101000                     | 4-48 |
| BLOS                               | branch if lower or same .....                      | 101400                     | 4-49 |
| BHIS                               | branch if higher or same .....                     | 103000                     | 4-50 |
| BLO                                | branch if lower .....                              | 103400                     | 4-51 |
| <b>Jump &amp; Subroutine</b>       |                                                    |                            |      |
| JMP                                | jump .....                                         | 0001DD                     | 4-52 |
| JSR                                | jump to subroutine .....                           | 004RDD                     | 4-54 |
| RTS                                | return from subroutine .....                       | 00020R                     | 4-56 |
| ▲ MARK                             | mark .....                                         | 006400                     | 4-57 |
| ▲ SOB                              | subtract one and branch (if $\neq 0$ ) .....       | 077R00                     | 4-59 |
| * SPL                              | set priority level .....                           | 00023N                     | 4 60 |
| <b>Trap &amp; Interrupt</b>        |                                                    |                            |      |
| EMT                                | emulator trap .....                                | 104000—104377              | 4-61 |
| TRAP                               | trap .....                                         | 104400—104777              | 4-62 |
| BPT                                | breakpoint trap .....                              | 000003                     | 4-63 |
| IOT                                | input/output trap .....                            | 000004                     | 4-64 |
| RTI                                | return from interrupt .....                        | 000002                     | 4-65 |
| ▲ RTT                              | return from interrupt .....                        | 000006                     | 4-66 |
| <b>MISCELLANEOUS</b>               |                                                    |                            |      |
| HALT                               | halt .....                                         | 000000                     | 4-70 |
| WAIT                               | wait for interrupt .....                           | 000001                     | 4-71 |
| RESET                              | reset external bus .....                           | 000005                     | 4-72 |
| <b>Condition Code Operation</b>    |                                                    |                            |      |
| CLC, CLV, CLZ, CLN, CCC            | clear .....                                        | 000240                     | 4-73 |
| SEC, SEV, SEZ, SEN, SCC            | set .....                                          | 000260                     | 4-73 |

4.4 SINGLE OPERAND INSTRUCTIONS

CLR  
CLRB

clear destination

■050DD



Operation: (dst) ← 0

Condition Codes: N: cleared  
Z: set  
V: cleared  
C: cleared

Description: Word: Contents of specified destination are replaced with zeroes.  
Byte: Same

Example: CLR R1

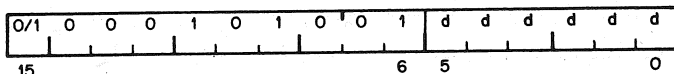
| Before        | After         |
|---------------|---------------|
| (R1) = 177777 | (R1) = 000000 |
| NZVC          | NZVC          |
| 1111          | 0100          |



# COM COMB

complement dst

■051DD



**Operation:**  $(dst) \leftarrow \sim(dst)$

**Condition Codes:** N: set if most significant bit of result is set; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result is 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: cleared  
 C: set

**Description:** Replaces the contents of the destination address by their logical complement (each bit equal to 0 is set and each bit equal to 1 is cleared)  
 Byte: Same

**Example:**

COM R0

Before  
 (R0) = 013333

After  
 (R0) = 164444

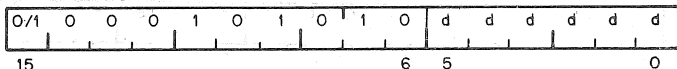
N Z V C  
 0 1 1 0

N Z V C  
 1 0 0 1

# INC INCB

increment dst

■052DD



**Operation:**  $(dst) \leftarrow (dst) + 1$

**Condition Codes:** N: set if result is <0; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result is 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: set if (dst) held 077777; cleared otherwise  
 C: not affected

**Description:** Word: Add one to contents of destination  
 Byte: Same

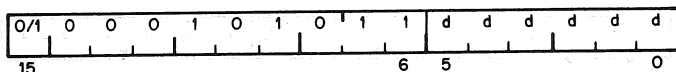
**Example:** INC R2

| Before        | After         |
|---------------|---------------|
| (R2) = 000333 | (R2) = 000334 |
| NZVC          | NZVC          |
| 0000          | 0000          |

# DEC DECB

decrement dst

■053DD



**Operation:** (dst) ← (dst) - 1

**Condition Codes:** N: set if result is < 0; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result is 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: set if (dst) was 100000; cleared otherwise  
 C: not affected

**Description:** Word: Subtract 1 from the contents of the destination  
 Byte: Same

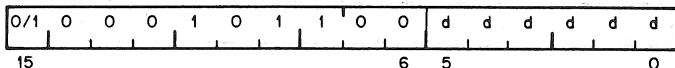
**Example:** DEC R5

| Before        | After         |
|---------------|---------------|
| (R5) = 000001 | (R5) = 000000 |
| NZVC          | NZVC          |
| 1000          | 0100          |

# NEG NEGB

negate dst

■054DD



**Operation:**  $(dst) \leftarrow -(dst)$

**Condition Codes:** N: set if the result is <0; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result is 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: set if the result is 100000; cleared otherwise  
 C: cleared if the result is 0; set otherwise

**Description:** Word: Replaces the contents of the destination address by its two's complement. Note that 100000 is replaced by itself (in two's complement notation the most negative number has no positive counterpart).  
 Byte: Same

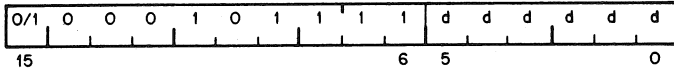
**Example:** NEG R0

| Before        | After         |
|---------------|---------------|
| (R0) = 000010 | (R0) = 177770 |
| NZVC          | NZVC          |
| 0000          | 1001          |

# TST TSTB

test dst

■057DD



**Operation:** (dst) ← (dst)

**Condition Codes:** N: set if the result is <0; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result is 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: cleared  
 C: cleared

**Description:** Word: Sets the condition codes N and Z according to the contents of the destination address  
 Byte: Same

**Example:**

TST R1

| Before        | After         |
|---------------|---------------|
| (R1) = 012340 | (R1) = 012340 |
| NZVC          | NZVC          |
| 0011          | 0000          |

### **Shifts**

Scaling data by factors of two is accomplished by the shift instructions:

**ASR** - Arithmetic shift right

**ASL** - Arithmetic shift left

The sign bit (bit 15) of the operand is replicated in shifts to the right. The low order bit is filled with 0 in shifts to the left. Bits shifted out of the C bit, as shown in the following examples, are lost.

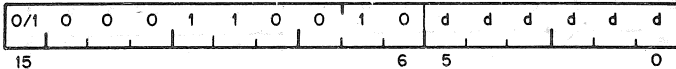
### **Rotates**

The rotate instructions operate on the destination word and the C bit as though they formed a 17-bit "circular buffer". These instructions facilitate sequential bit testing and detailed bit manipulation.

# ASR ASRB

arithmetic shift right

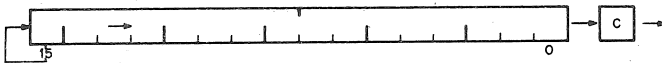
■062DD



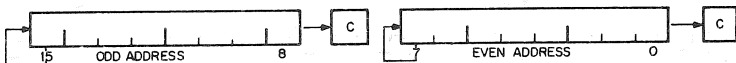
**Operation:** (dst)  $\leftarrow$  (dst) shifted one place to the right

**Condition Codes:** N: set if the high-order bit of the result is set (result < 0); cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if the result = 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: loaded from the Exclusive OR of the N-bit and C-bit (as set by the completion of the shift operation)  
 C: loaded from low-order bit of the destination

**Description:** Word: Shifts all bits of the destination right one place. Bit 15 is replicated. The C-bit is loaded from bit 0 of the destination. ASR performs signed division of the destination by two.  
 Word:



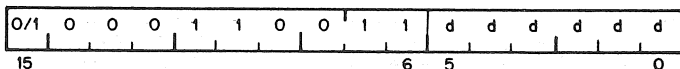
Byte:



# ASL ASLB

arithmetic shift left

■063DD



## Operation:

(dst) ← (dst) shifted one place to the left

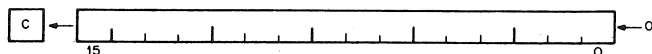
## Condition Codes:

N: set if high-order bit of the result is set (result < 0); cleared otherwise  
Z: set if the result = 0; cleared otherwise  
V: loaded with the exclusive OR of the N-bit and C-bit (as set by the completion of the shift operation)  
C: loaded with the high-order bit of the destination

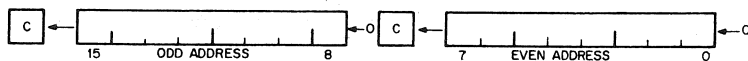
## Description:

Word: Shifts all bits of the destination left one place. Bit 0 is loaded with an 0. The C-bit of the status word is loaded from the most significant bit of the destination. ASL performs a signed multiplication of the destination by 2 with overflow indication.

Word:



Byte:

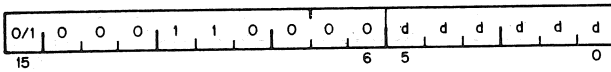




# ROR RORB

rotate right

■060DD

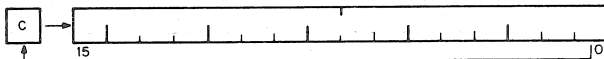


**Condition Codes:** N: set if the high-order bit of the result is set (result < 0); cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if all bits of result = 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: loaded with the Exclusive OR of the N-bit and C-bit (as set by the completion of the rotate operation)  
 C: loaded with the low-order bit of the destination

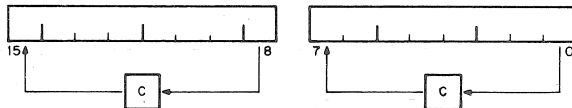
**Description:** Rotates all bits of the destination right one place. Bit 0 is loaded into the C-bit and the previous contents of the C-bit are loaded into bit 15 of the destination.  
**Byte:** Same

**Example:**

Word:



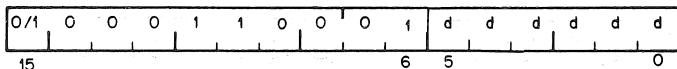
Byte:



# ROL ROLB

rotate left

■061DD

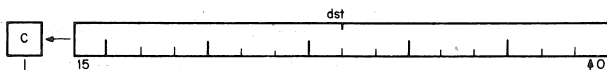


**Condition Codes:** N: set if the high-order bit of the result word is set (result < 0): cleared otherwise  
Z: set if all bits of the result word = 0; cleared otherwise  
V: loaded with the Exclusive OR of the N-bit and C-bit (as set by the completion of the rotate operation)  
C: loaded with the high-order bit of the destination

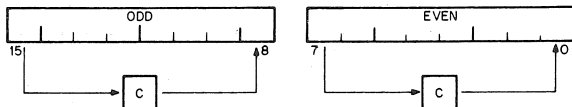
**Description:** Word: Rotate all bits of the destination left one place. Bit 15 is loaded into the C-bit of the status word and the previous contents of the C-bit are loaded into Bit 0 of the destination.  
Byte: Same

**Example:**

Word:



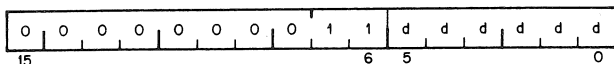
Bytes:



# SWAB

swap bytes

0003DD



**Operation:** Byte 1/Byte 0  $\leftarrow$  Byte 0/Byte 1

**Condition Codes:** N: set if high-order bit of low-order byte (bit 7) of result is set; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if low-order byte of result = 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: cleared  
 C: cleared

**Description:** Exchanges high-order byte and low-order byte of the destination word (destination must be a word address).

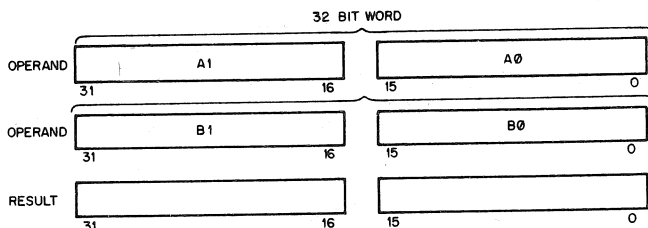
**Example:** SWAB R1

|               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| Before        | After         |
| (R1) = 077777 | (R1) = 177577 |
| N Z V C       | N Z V C       |
| 1 1 1 1       | 0 0 0 0       |

### Multiple Precision

It is sometimes necessary to do arithmetic on operands considered as multiple words or bytes. The PDP-11 makes special provision for such operations with the instructions ADC (Add Carry) and SBC (Subtract Carry) and their byte equivalents.

For example two 16-bit words may be combined into a 32-bit double precision word and added or subtracted as shown below:



### Example:

The addition of -1 and -1 could be performed as follows:

$$-1 = 3777777777$$

$$(R1) = 177777 \quad (R2) = 177777 \quad (R3) = 177777 \quad (R4) = 177777$$

ADD R1,R2

ADC R3

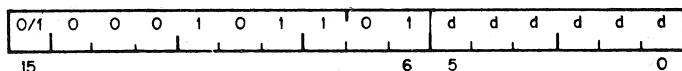
ADD R4,R3

1. After (R1) and (R2) are added, 1 is loaded into the C bit
2. ADC instruction adds C bit to (R3); (R3) = 0
3. (R3) and (R4) are added
4. Result is 3777777776 or -2

# ADC ADCB

add carry

■055DD



**Operation:**  $(dst) \leftarrow (dst) + (C)$

**Condition Codes:** N: set if result  $< 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result  $= 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
 V: set if (dst) was 077777 and (C) was 1; cleared otherwise  
 C: set if (dst) was 177777 and (C) was 1; cleared otherwise

**Description:** Adds the contents of the C-bit into the destination. This permits the carry from the addition of the low-order words to be carried into the high-order result.  
 Byte: Same

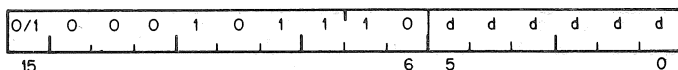
**Example:** Double precision addition may be done with the following instruction sequence:

|     |       |                             |
|-----|-------|-----------------------------|
| ADD | A0,B0 | ; add low-order parts       |
| ADC | B1    | ; add carry into high-order |
| ADD | A1,B1 | ; add high order parts      |

# SBC SBCB

subtract carry

■056DD



**Operation:**  $(dst) \leftarrow (dst) - (C)$

**Condition Codes:** N: set if result  $< 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: set if (dst) was 100000; cleared otherwise  
 C: set if (dst) was 0 and C was 1; cleared otherwise

**Description:** Word: Subtracts the contents of the C-bit from the destination. This permits the carry from the subtraction of two low-order words to be subtracted from the high order part of the result.  
 Byte: Same

**Example:** Double precision subtraction is done by:

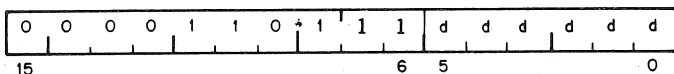
```
SUB  A0,B0
SBC  B1
SUB  A1,B1
```

# SXT

(not in the 11/04, 11/05 & 11/10)

sign extend

0067DD



**Operation:** (dst)  $\leftarrow$  0 if N bit is clear  
(dst)  $\leftarrow$  -1 if N bit is set

**Condition Codes:** N: unaffected  
Z: set if N bit clear  
V: cleared  
C: unaffected

**Description:** If the condition code bit N is set then a -1 is placed in the destination operand; if N bit is clear, then a 0 is placed in the destination operand. This instruction is particularly useful in multiple precision arithmetic because it permits the sign to be extended through multiple words.

VOM

#### **4.5 DOUBLE OPERAND INSTRUCTIONS**

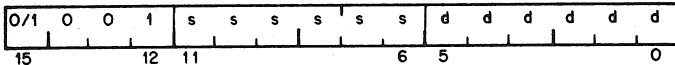
Double operand instructions provide an instruction (and time) saving facility since they eliminate the need for "load" and "save" sequences such as those used in accumulator-oriented machines.



# MOV MOVB

move source to destination

■1SSDD



**Operation:** (dst) ← (src)

**Condition Codes:** N: set if (src) < 0; cleared otherwise  
Z: set if (src) = 0; cleared otherwise  
V: cleared  
C: not affected

**Description:** Word: Moves the source operand to the destination location. The previous contents of the destination are lost. The contents of the source address are not affected.  
Byte: Same as MOV. The MOVB to a register (unique among byte instructions) extends the most significant bit of the low order byte (sign extension). Otherwise MOVB operates on bytes exactly as MOV operates on words.

**Example:** MOV XXX,R1 ; loads Register 1 with the contents of memory location; XXX represents a programmer-defined mnemonic used to represent a memory location

MOV #20,R0 ; loads the number 20 into Register 0; " #" indicates that the value 20 is the operand

MOV @ #20,-(R6) ; pushes the operand contained in location 20 onto the stack

MOV (R6) +, @ #177566 ; pops the operand off a stack and moves it into memory location 177566 (terminal print buffer)

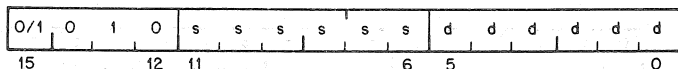
MOV R1,R3 ; performs an inter register transfer

MOVB @ #177562, @ #177566 ; moves a character from terminal keyboard buffer to terminal buffer

# CMP CMPB

compare src to dst

■ 2SSDD



**Operation:** (src)-(dst)

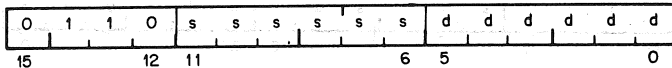
**Condition Codes:** N: set if result < 0; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result = 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: set if there was arithmetic overflow; that is, operands were of opposite signs and the sign of the destination was the same as the sign of the result; cleared otherwise  
 C: cleared if there was a carry from the most significant bit of the result; set otherwise

**Description:** Compares the source and destination operands and sets the condition codes, which may then be used for arithmetic and logical conditional branches. Both operands are unaffected. The only action is to set the condition codes. The compare is customarily followed by a conditional branch instruction. Note that unlike the subtract instruction the order of operation is (src)-(dst), not (dst)-(src).

# ADD

add src to dst

06SSDD



**Operation:**  $(dst) \leftarrow (src) + (dst)$

**Condition Codes:** N: set if result  $< 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result  $= 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
 V: set if there was arithmetic overflow as a result of the operation; that is both operands were of the same sign and the result was of the opposite sign; cleared otherwise  
 C: set if there was a carry from the most significant bit of the result; cleared otherwise

**Description:** Adds the source operand to the destination operand and stores the result at the destination address. The original contents of the destination are lost. The contents of the source are not affected. Two's complement addition is performed.

**Examples:**

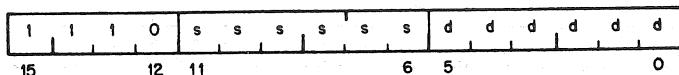
|                           |                  |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| Add to register:          | ADD 20,R0        |
| Add to memory:            | ADD R1,XXX       |
| Add register to register: | ADD R1,R2        |
| Add memory to memory:     | ADD@ # 17750,XXX |

XXX is a programmer-defined mnemonic for a memory location.

# SUB

subtract src from dst

16SSDD



**Operation:**  $(dst) \leftarrow (dst) - (src)$

**Condition Codes:** N: set if result  $< 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result  $= 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
 V: set if there was arithmetic overflow as a result of the operation, that is if operands were of opposite signs and the sign of the source was the same as the sign of the result; cleared otherwise  
 C: cleared if there was a carry from the most significant bit of the result; set otherwise

**Description:** Subtracts the source operand from the destination operand and leaves the result at the destination address. The original contents of the destination are lost. The contents of the source are not affected. In double-precision arithmetic the C-bit, when set, indicates a "borrow".

**Example:** SUB R1,R2

| Before        | After         |
|---------------|---------------|
| (R1) = 011111 | (R1) = 011111 |
| (R2) = 012345 | (R2) = 001234 |
| NZVC          | NZVC          |
| 1111          | 0000          |

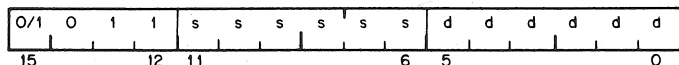
## Logical

These instructions have the same format as the double operand arithmetic group. They permit operations on data at the bit level.

# BIT BITB

bit test

■3SSDD



**Operation:** (src)  $\wedge$  (dst)

**Condition Codes:** N: set if high-order bit of result set; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result = 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: cleared  
 C: not affected

**Description:** Performs logical "and" comparison of the source and destination operands and modifies condition codes accordingly. Neither the source nor destination operands are affected. The BIT instruction may be used to test whether any of the corresponding bits that are set in the destination are also set in the source or whether all corresponding bits set in the destination are clear in the source.

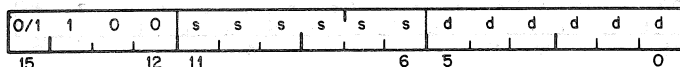
**Example:** BIT #30,R3 ; test bits 3 and 4 of R3 to see  
 ; if both are off

(30)<sub>8</sub> = 0 000 000 000 011 000

# BIC BICB

bit clear

■4SSDD



**Operation:**  $(dst) \leftarrow \sim(src) \Delta (dst)$

**Condition Codes:** N: set if high order bit of result set; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result = 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: cleared  
 C: not affected

**Description:** Clears each bit in the destination that corresponds to a set bit in the source. The original contents of the destination are lost. The contents of the source are unaffected.

**Example:** BIC R3,R4

|               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| Before        | After         |
| (R3) = 001234 | (R3) = 001234 |
| (R4) = 001111 | (R4) = 000101 |
| N Z V C       | N Z V C       |
| 1 1 1 1       | 0 0 0 1       |

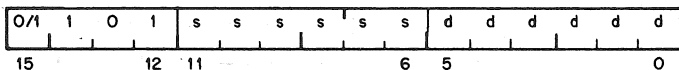
**Before:** (R3)=0 000 001 010 011 100  
 (R4)=0 000 001 001 001 001

**After:** (R4)=0 000 000 001 000 001

# BIS BISB

bit set

■5SSDD



**Operation:** (dst) ← (src) v (dst)

**Condition Codes:** N: set if high-order bit of result set, cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result = 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: cleared  
 C: not affected

**Description:** Performs "Inclusive OR" operation between the source and destination operands and leaves the result at the destination address; that is, corresponding bits set in the source are set in the destination. The contents of the destination are lost.

**Example:**

BIS R0,R1

| Before        | After         |
|---------------|---------------|
| (R0) = 001234 | (R0) = 001234 |
| (R1) = 001111 | (R1) = 001335 |
| N Z V C       | N Z V C       |
| 0 0 0 0       | 0 0 0 0       |

**Before:** (R0)=0 000 001 010 011 100  
 (R1)=0 000 001 001 001 001

**After:** (R1)=0 000 001 011 011 101

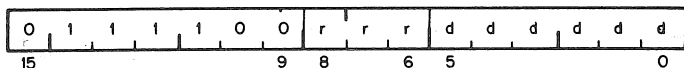


# XOR

(not in the 11/04, 11/05 & 11/10)

exclusive OR

074RDD



**Operation:** (dst) ← Rv(dst)

**Condition Codes:** N: set if the result < 0; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result = 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: cleared  
 C: unaffected

**Description:** The exclusive OR of the register and destination operand is stored in the destination address. Contents of register are unaffected. Assembler format is: XOR R,D

**Example:** XOR R0,R2

| Before        | After         |
|---------------|---------------|
| (R0) = 001234 | (R0) = 001234 |
| (R2) = 001111 | (R2) = 000325 |

**Before:** (R0)=0 000 001 010 011 100  
 (R2)=0 000 001 001 001 001

**After:** (R2)=0 000 000 011 010 101

## 4.6 PROGRAM CONTROL INSTRUCTIONS

### Branches

The instruction causes a branch to a location defined by the sum of the offset (multiplied by 2) and the current contents of the Program Counter if:

- a) the branch instruction is unconditional
- b) it is conditional and the conditions are met after testing the condition codes (status word).

The offset is the number of words from the current contents of the PC. Note that the current contents of the PC point to the word following the branch instruction.

Although the PC expresses a byte address, the offset is expressed in words. The offset is automatically multiplied by two to express bytes before it is added to the PC. Bit 7 is the sign of the offset. If it is set, the offset is negative and the branch is done in the backward direction. Similarly if it is not set, the offset is positive and the branch is done in the forward direction.

The 8-bit offset allows branching in the backward direction by 200<sub>10</sub> words (400<sub>10</sub> bytes) from the current PC, and in the forward direction by 177<sub>10</sub> words (376<sub>10</sub> bytes) from the current PC.

The PDP-11 assembler handles address arithmetic for the user and computes and assembles the proper offset field for branch instructions in the form:

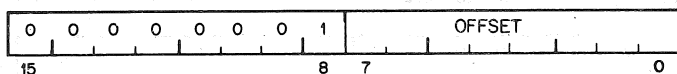
Bxx loc

Where "Bxx" is the branch instruction and "loc" is the address to which the branch is to be made. The assembler gives an error indication in the instruction if the permissible branch range is exceeded. Branch instructions have no effect on condition codes.

# BR

branch (unconditional)

000400 Plus offset



**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$

**Description:** Provides a way of transferring program control within a range of -128 to +127 words with a one word instruction.

New PC address = updated PC + (2 X offset)

Updated PC = address of branch instruction + 2

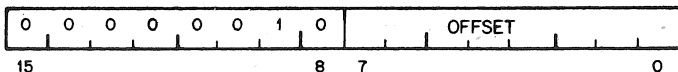
**Example:** With the Branch instruction at location 500, the following offsets apply.

| New PC Address | Offset Code | Offset (decimal) |
|----------------|-------------|------------------|
| 474            | 375         | -3               |
| 476            | 376         | -2               |
| 500            | 377         | -1               |
| 502            | 000         | 0                |
| 504            | 001         | +1               |
| 506            | 002         | +2               |

## BNE

branch if not equal (to zero)

001000 Plus offset



**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $Z = 0$

**Condition Codes:** Unaffected

**Description:** Tests the state of the Z-bit and causes a branch if the Z-bit is clear. BNE is the complementary operation to BEQ. It is used to test inequality following a CMP, to test that some bits set in the destination were also in the source, following a BIT, and generally, to test that the result of the previous operation was not zero.

**Example:**

|     |     |                                |
|-----|-----|--------------------------------|
| CMP | A,B | ; compare A and B              |
| BNE | C   | ; branch if they are not equal |

will branch to C if  $A \neq B$

and the sequence

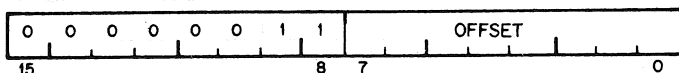
|     |     |                                          |
|-----|-----|------------------------------------------|
| ADD | A,B | ; add A to B                             |
| BNE | C   | ; Branch if the result is not equal to 0 |

will branch to C if  $A + B \neq 0$

## BEQ

branch if equal (to zero)

001400 Plus offset



**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $Z = 1$

**Condition Codes:** Unaffected

**Description:** Tests the state of the Z-bit and causes a branch if Z is set. As an example, it is used to test equality following a CMP operation, to test that no bits set in the destination were also set in the source following a BIT operation, and generally, to test that the result of the previous operation was zero.

**Example:**

|     |     |                            |
|-----|-----|----------------------------|
| CMP | A,B | ; compare A and B          |
| BEQ | C   | ; branch if they are equal |

will branch to C if  $A = B$  (A - B = 0)  
and the sequence

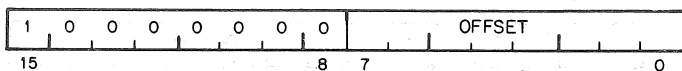
|     |     |                            |
|-----|-----|----------------------------|
| ADD | A,B | ; add A to B               |
| BEQ | C   | ; branch if the result = 0 |

will branch to C if  $A + B = 0$ .

# BPL

branch if plus

100000 Plus offset



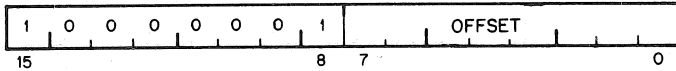
**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $N=0$

**Description:** Tests the state of the N-bit and causes a branch if N is clear, (positive result).

## BMI

branch if minus

100400 Plus offset



**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $N = 1$

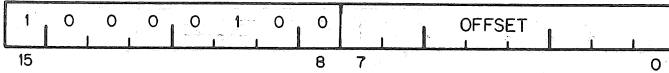
**Condition Codes:** Unaffected

**Description:** Tests the state of the N-bit and causes a branch if N is set. It is used to test the sign (most significant bit) of the result of the previous operation), branching if negative.

# BVC

branch if overflow is clear

102000 Plus offset



**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $V = 0$

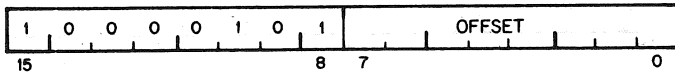
**Description:** Tests the state of the V bit and causes a branch if the V bit is clear. BVC is complementary operation to BVS.



## BVS

branch if overflow is set

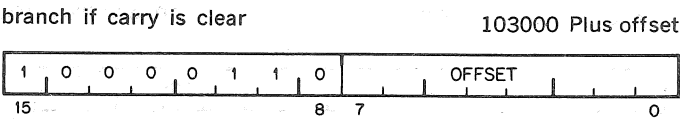
102400 Plus offset



**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $V = 1$

**Description:** Tests the state of V bit (overflow) and causes a branch if the V bit is set. BVS is used to detect arithmetic overflow in the previous operation.

# BCC



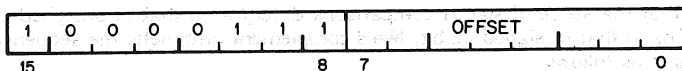
**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset}) \text{ if } C = 0$

**Description:** Tests the state of the C-bit and causes a branch if C is clear.  
BCC is the complementary operation to BCS

## BCS

branch if carry is set

103400 Plus offset



**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $C=1$

**Description:** Tests the state of the C-bit and causes a branch if C is set. It is used to test for a carry in the result of a previous operation.

### Signed Conditional Branches

Particular combinations of the condition code bits are tested with the signed conditional branches. These instructions are used to test the results of instructions in which the operands were considered as signed (two's complement) values.

Note that the sense of signed comparisons differs from that of unsigned comparisons in that in signed 16-bit, two's complement arithmetic the sequence of values is as follows:

|          |        |
|----------|--------|
| largest  | 077777 |
|          | 077776 |
| positive | .      |
|          | .      |
|          | .      |
|          | 000001 |
|          | 000000 |
|          | 177777 |
|          | 177776 |
|          | .      |
| negative | .      |
|          | .      |
|          | 100001 |
| smallest | 100000 |

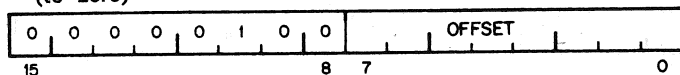
whereas in unsigned 16-bit arithmetic the sequence is considered to be

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| highest | 177777 |
|         | .      |
|         | .      |
|         | .      |
|         | .      |
|         | .      |
|         | 000002 |
|         | 000001 |
| lowest  | 000000 |

## BGE

branch if greater than or equal  
(to zero)

002000 Plus offset



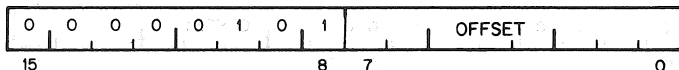
**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $N \vee V = 0$

**Description:** Causes a branch if N and V are either both clear or both set. BGE is the complementary operation to BLT. Thus BGE will always cause a branch when it follows an operation that caused addition of two positive numbers. BGE will also cause a branch on a zero result.

## BLT

branch if less than (zero)

002400 Plus offset



**Operation:**

$PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $N \vee V = 1$

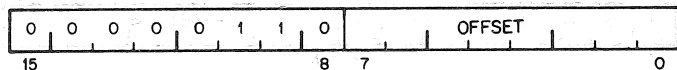
**Description:**

Causes a branch if the "Exclusive Or" of the N and V bits are 1. Thus BLT will always branch following an operation that added two negative numbers, even if overflow occurred. In particular, BLT will always cause a branch if it follows a CMP instruction operating on a negative source and a positive destination (even if overflow occurred). Further, BLT will never cause a branch when it follows a CMP instruction operating on a positive source and negative destination. BLT will not cause a branch if the result of the previous operation was zero (without overflow).

# BGT

branch if greater than (zero)

003000 Plus offset



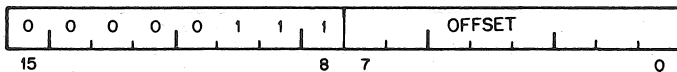
**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $Z \vee (N \vee V) = 0$

**Description:** Operation of BGT is similar to BGE, except BGT will not cause a branch on a zero result.

**BLE**

branch if less than or equal (to zero)

003400 Plus offset



**Operation:**

$$PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset}) \text{ if } Z \vee (N \wedge V) = 1$$

**Description:**

Operation is similar to BLT but in addition will cause a branch if the result of the previous operation was zero.



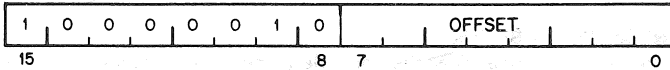
### **Unsigned Conditional Branches**

The Unsigned Conditional Branches provide a means for testing the result of comparison operations in which the operands are considered as unsigned values.

# BHI

branch if higher

101000 Plus offset



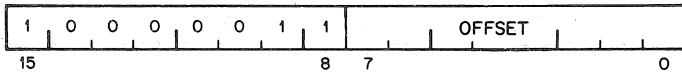
**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $C = 0$  and  $Z = 0$

**Description:** Causes a branch if the previous operation caused neither a carry nor a zero result. This will happen in comparison (CMP) operations as long as the source has a higher unsigned value than the destination.

## BLOS

branch if lower or same

101400 Plus offset



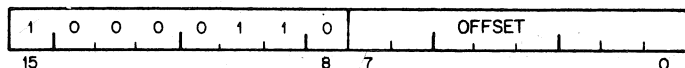
**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $C \vee Z = 1$

**Description:** Causes a branch if the previous operation caused either a carry or a zero result. BLOS is the complementary operation to BHI. The branch will occur in comparison operations as long as the source is equal to, or has a lower unsigned value than the destination.

# BHIS

branch if higher or same

103000 Plus offset



**Operation:**

$PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $C = 0$

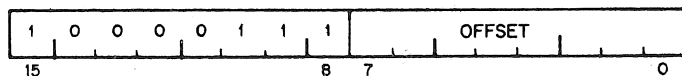
**Description:**

BHIS is the same instruction as BCC. This mnemonic is included only for convenience.

# BLO

branch if lower

103400 Plus offset



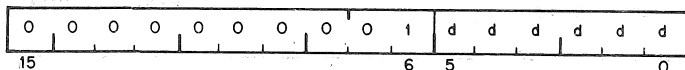
**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow PC + (2 \times \text{offset})$  if  $C = 1$

**Description:** BLO is same instruction as BCS. This mnemonic is included only for convenience.

# JMP

jump

0001DD



**Operation:** PC ← (dst)

**Condition Codes:** not affected

**Description:**

JMP provides more flexible program branching than provided with the branch instructions. Control may be transferred to any location in memory (no range limitation) and can be accomplished with the full flexibility of the addressing modes, with the exception of register mode O. Execution of a jump with mode O will cause an "illegal instruction" condition. (Program control cannot be transferred to a register.) Register deferred mode is legal and will cause program control to be transferred to the address held in the specified register. Note that instructions are word data and must therefore be fetched from an even-numbered address. A 'boundary error' trap condition will result when the processor attempts to fetch an instruction from an odd address.

Deferred index mode JMP instructions permit transfer of control to the address contained in a selectable element of a table of dispatch vectors.

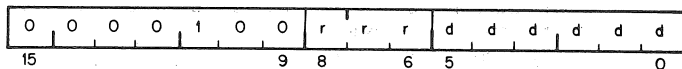
### **Subroutine Instructions**

The subroutine call in the PDP-11 provides for automatic nesting of subroutines, reentrancy, and multiple entry points. Subroutines may call other subroutines (or indeed themselves) to any level of nesting without making special provision for storage or return addresses at each level of subroutine call. The subroutine calling mechanism does not modify any fixed location in memory, thus providing for reentrancy. This allows one copy of a subroutine to be shared among several interrupting processes. For more detailed description of subroutine programming see Chapter 5.

# JSR

jump to subroutine

004RDD



- Operation:**
- $\downarrow(\text{SP}) \leftarrow \text{reg}$  (push reg contents onto processor stack)
  - $\text{reg} \leftarrow \text{PC}$  (PC holds location following JSR; this address now put in reg)
  - $\text{PC} \leftarrow (\text{dst})$  (PC now points to subroutine destination)

**Description:** In execution of the JSR, the old contents of the specified register (the "LINKAGE POINTER") are automatically pushed onto the processor stack and new linkage information placed in the register. Thus subroutines nested within subroutines to any depth may all be called with the same linkage register. There is no need either to plan the maximum depth at which any particular subroutine will be called or to include instructions in each routine to save and restore the linkage pointer. Further, since all linkages are saved in a reentrant manner on the processor stack execution of a subroutine may be interrupted, the same subroutine reentered and executed by an interrupt service routine. Execution of the initial subroutine can then be resumed when other requests are satisfied. This process (called nesting) can proceed to any level.

A subroutine called with a JSR reg,dst instruction can access the arguments following the call with either autoincrement addressing, (reg) + , (if arguments are accessed sequentially) or by indexed addressing, X(reg), (if accessed in random order). These addressing modes may also be deferred, @(reg) + and @X(reg) if the parameters are operand addresses rather than the operands themselves.



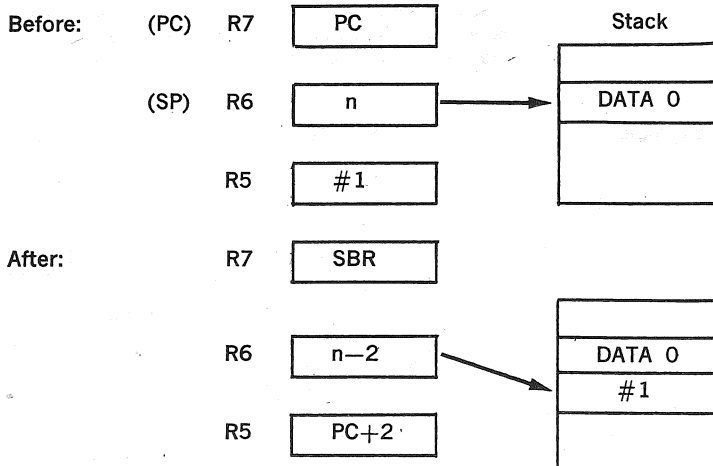
JSR PC, dst is a special case of the PDP-11 subroutine call suitable for subroutine calls that transmit parameters through the general registers. The SP and the PC are the only registers that may be modified by this call.

Another special case of the JSR instruction is JSR PC, @(SP)+ which exchanges the top element of the processor stack and the contents of the program counter. Use of this instruction allows two routines to swap program control and resume operation when recalled where they left off. Such routines are called "co-routines."

Return from a subroutine is done by the RTS instruction. RTS reg loads the contents of reg into the PC and pops the top element of the processor stack into the specified register.

**Example:**

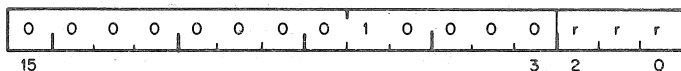
JSR R5, SBR



# RTS

return from subroutine

00020R

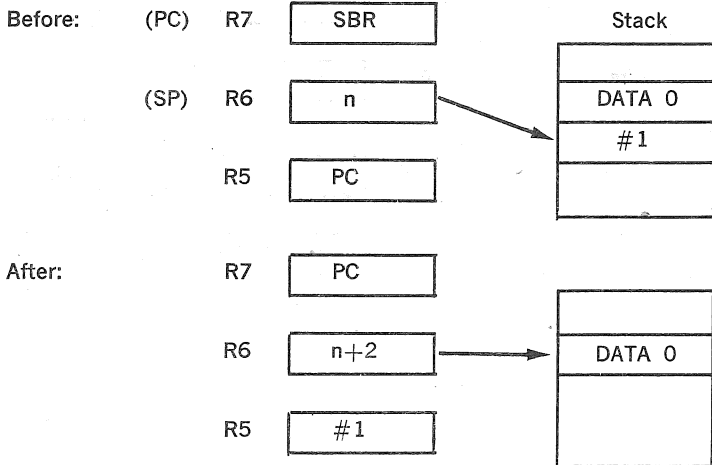


**Operation:**  $PC \leftarrow reg$   
 $reg \leftarrow (SP) \Delta$

**Description:** Loads contents of reg into PC and pops the top element of the processor stack into the specified register. Return from a non-reentrant subroutine is typically made through the same register that was used in its call. Thus, a subroutine called with a JSR PC, dst exits with a RTS PC and a subroutine called with a JSR R5, dst, may pick up parameters with addressing modes (R5)+, X(R5), or @X(R5) and finally exits with an RTS R5

**Example:**

RTS R5

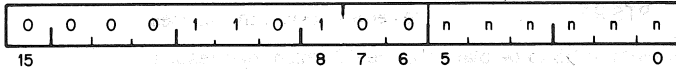


# MARK

(not in the 11/04, 11/05 & 11/10)

mark

00 64 NN



**Operation:**  $SP \leftarrow PC + 2|nn$   $nn = \text{number of parameters}$   
 $PC \leftarrow R5$   
 $R5 \leftarrow (SP) \uparrow$

**Condition Codes:** unaffected

**Description:** Used as part of the standard PDP-11 subroutine return convention. MARK facilitates the stack clean up procedures involved in subroutine exit. Assembler format is: MARK N

**Example:**

|     |               |                                       |
|-----|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| MOV | R5, -(SP)     | ;place old R5 on stack                |
| MOV | P1, -(SP)     | ;place N parameters                   |
| MOV | P2, -(SP)     | ;on the stack to be                   |
|     |               | ;used there by the                    |
|     |               | ;subroutine                           |
| MOV | PN, -(SP)     |                                       |
| MOV | #MARKN, -(SP) | ;places the instruction               |
|     |               | ;MARK N on the stack                  |
| MOV | SP, R5        | ;set up address at Mark N instruction |
| JSR | PC, SUB       | ;jump to subroutine                   |

At this point the stack is as follows:

|        |
|--------|
| OLD R5 |
| P1     |
| PN     |
| MARK N |
| OLD PC |

And the program is at the address SUB which is the beginning of the subroutine.

SUB: ;execution of the subroutine itself

RTS R5 ;the return begins: this causes the contents of R5 to be placed in the PC which then results in the execution of the instruction MARK N. The contents of old PC are placed in R5

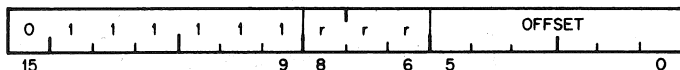
MARK N causes: (1) the stack pointer to be adjusted to point to the old R5 value; (2) the value now in R5 (the old PC) to be placed in the PC; and (3) contents of the the old R5 to be popped into R5 thus completing the return from subroutine.

# SOB

(not in the 11/04, 11/05 & 11/10)

subtract one and branch (if  $\neq 0$ )

077R00 Plus offset



**Operation:**  $R \leftarrow R - 1$  if this result  $\neq 0$  then  $PC \leftarrow PC - (2 \times \text{offset})$

**Condition Codes:** unaffected

**Description:** The register is decremented. If it is not equal to 0, twice the offset is subtracted from the PC (now pointing to the following word). The offset is interpreted as a sixbit positive number. This instruction provides a fast, efficient method of loop control. Assembler syntax is:

SOB R,A

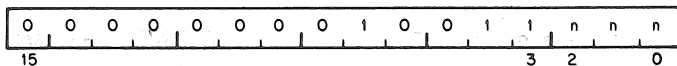
Where A is the address to which transfer is to be made if the decremented R is not equal to 0. Note that the SOB instruction can not be used to transfer control in the forward direction.

## SPL

(only in the 11/45)

Set Priority Level

00023N



**Operation:** PS (bits 7-5) ← Priority (priority = n n n)

**Condition Codes:** not affected

**Description** The least significant three bits of the instruction are loaded into the Program Status Word (PS) bits 7-5 thus causing a changed priority. The old priority is lost.

Assembler syntax is: SPL N

Note: This instruction is a no op in User and Supervisor modes.

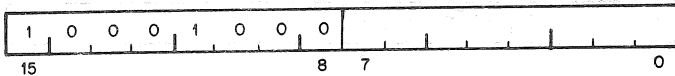
### Traps

Trap instructions provide for calls to emulators, I/O monitors, debugging packages, and user-defined interpreters. A trap is effectively an interrupt generated by software. When a trap occurs the contents of the current Program Counter (PC) and Program Status Word (PS) are pushed onto the processor stack and replaced by the contents of a two-word trap vector containing a new PC and new PS. The return sequence from a trap involves executing an RTI or RTT instruction which restores the old PC and old PS by popping them from the stack. Trap vectors are located at permanently assigned fixed addresses.

# EMT

emulator trap

104000—104377



**Operation:**

$\nabla(\text{SP}) \leftarrow \text{PS}$   
 $\nabla(\text{SP}) \leftarrow \text{PC}$   
 $\text{PC} \leftarrow (30)$   
 $\text{PS} \leftarrow (32)$

**Condition Codes:**

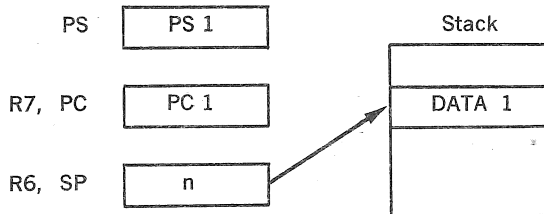
N: loaded from trap vector  
 Z: loaded from trap vector  
 V: loaded from trap vector  
 C: loaded from trap vector

**Description:**

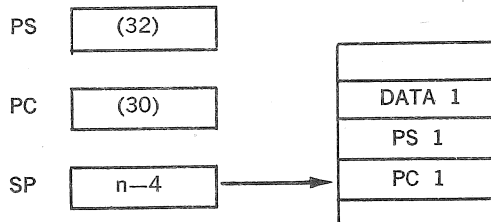
All operation codes from 104000 to 104377 are EMT instructions and may be used to transmit information to the emulating routine (e.g., function to be performed). The trap vector for EMT is at address 30. The new PC is taken from the word at address 30; the new central processor status (PS) is taken from the word at address 32.

Caution: EMT is used frequently by DEC system software and is therefore not recommended for general use.

**Before:**



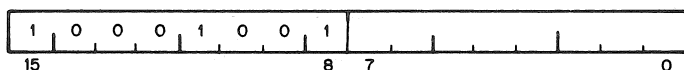
**After:**



# TRAP

trap

104400—104777



**Operation:**

- $\nabla (SP) \leftarrow PS$
- $\nabla (SP) \leftarrow PC$
- $PC \leftarrow (34)$
- $PS \leftarrow (36)$

**Condition Codes:**

- N: loaded from trap vector
- Z: loaded from trap vector
- V: loaded from trap vector
- C: loaded from trap vector

**Description:** Operation codes from 104400 to 104777 are TRAP instructions. TRAPs and EMTs are identical in operation, except that the trap vector for TRAP is at address 34.

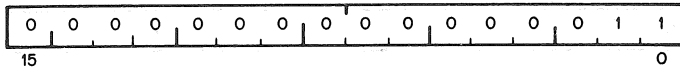
**Note:** Since DEC software makes frequent use of EMT, the TRAP instruction is recommended for general use.



## BPT

breakpoint trap

000003



**Operation:**  $\nabla(\text{SP}) \leftarrow \text{PS}$   
 $\nabla(\text{SP}) \leftarrow \text{PC}$   
 $\text{PC} \leftarrow (14)$   
 $\text{PS} \leftarrow (16)$

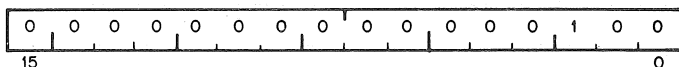
**Condition Codes:** N: loaded from trap vector  
Z: loaded from trap vector  
V: loaded from trap vector  
C: loaded from trap vector

**Description:** Performs a trap sequence with a trap vector address of 14. Used to call debugging aids. The user is cautioned against employing code 000003 in programs run under these debugging aids.  
(no information is transmitted in the low byte.)

# IOT

input/output trap

000004



## Operation:

$\Psi(SP) \leftarrow PS$

$\Psi(SP) \leftarrow PC$

$PC \leftarrow (20)$

$PS \leftarrow (22)$

## Condition Codes:

N:loaded from trap vector

Z:loaded from trap vector

V:loaded from trap vector

C:loaded from trap vector

## Description:

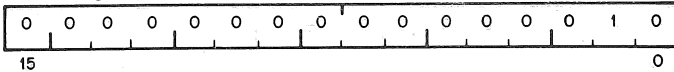
Performs a trap sequence with a trap vector address of 20. Used to call the I/O Executive routine IOX in the paper tape software system, and for error reporting in the Disk Operating System.  
(no information is transmitted in the low byte)

RTI

775

return from interrupt

000002



**Operation:** PC  $\leftarrow$  (SP) $\Delta$   
PS  $\leftarrow$  (SP) $\Delta$

**Condition Codes:** N: loaded from processor stack  
Z: loaded from processor stack  
V: loaded from processor stack  
C: loaded from processor stack

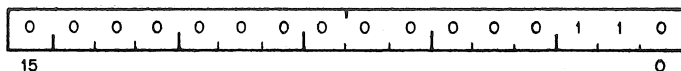
**Description:** Used to exit from an interrupt or TRAP service routine. The PC and PS are restored (popped) from the processor stack.

## RTT

(not in the 11/04, 11/05 & 11/10)

return from interrupt

000006



**Operation:**

$PC \leftarrow (SP) \uparrow$   
 $PS \leftarrow (SP) \uparrow$

**Condition Codes:**

N: loaded from processor stack  
Z: loaded from processor stack  
V: loaded from processor stack  
C: loaded from processor stack

**Description:**

This is the same as the RTI instruction except that it inhibits a trace trap, while RTI permits a trace trap. If a trace trap is pending, the first instruction after the RTT will be executed prior to the next "T" trap. In the case of the RTI instruction the "T" trap will occur immediately after the RTI.

**Reserved Instruction Traps** - These are caused by attempts to execute instruction codes reserved for future processor expansion (reserved instructions) or instructions with illegal addressing modes (illegal instructions). Order codes not corresponding to any of the instructions described are considered to be reserved instructions. JMP and JSR with register mode destinations are illegal instructions. Reserved and illegal instruction traps occur as described under EMT, but trap through vectors at addresses 10 and 4 respectively.

#### **Stack Overflow Trap**

**Bus Error Traps** - Bus Error Traps are:

1. **Boundary Errors** - attempts to reference instructions or word operands at odd addresses.
2. **Time-Out Errors** - attempts to reference addresses on the bus that made no response within a certain length of time. In general, these are caused by attempts to reference non-existent memory, and attempts to reference non-existent peripheral devices.

Bus error traps cause processor traps through the trap vector address 4.

**Trace Trap** - Trace Trap enables bit 4 of the PS and causes processor traps at the end of instruction executions. The instruction that is executed after the instruction that set the T-bit will proceed to completion and then cause a processor trap through the trap vector at address 14. Note that the trace trap is a system debugging aid and is transparent to the general programmer.

The following are special cases and are detailed in subsequent paragraphs.

1. The traced instruction cleared the T-bit.
2. The traced instruction set the T-bit.
3. The traced instruction caused an instruction trap.
4. The traced instruction caused a bus error trap.
5. The traced instruction caused a stack overflow trap.
6. The process was interrupted between the time the T-bit was set and the fetching of the instruction that was to be traced.
7. The traced instruction was a WAIT.
8. The traced instruction was a HALT.
9. The traced instruction was a Return from Trap

**Note:** The traced instruction is the instruction after the one that sets the T-bit.

**An instruction that cleared the T-bit** - Upon fetching the traced instruction an internal flag, the trace flag, was set. The trap will still occur at the end of execution of this instruction. The stacked status word, however, will have a clear T-bit.

**An instruction that set the T-bit** - Since the T-bit was already set, setting it again has no effect. The trap will occur.

**An instruction that caused an Instruction Trap.** The instruction trap is sprung and the entire routine for the service trap is executed. If the service routine exits with an RTI or in any other way restores the stacked status word, the T-bit is set again, the instruction following the traced instruction is executed and, unless it is one of the special cases noted above, a trace trap occurs.

**An instruction that caused a Bus Error Trap.** This is treated as an Instruction Trap. The only difference is that the error service is not as likely to exit with an RTI, so that the trace trap may not occur.

**An instruction that caused a stack overflow.** The instruction completes execution as usual—the Stack Overflow does not cause a trap. The Trace Trap Vector is loaded into the PC and PS, and the old PC and PS are pushed onto the stack. Stack Overflow occurs again, and this time the trap is made.

**An interrupt between setting of the T-bit and fetch of the traced instruction.** The entire interrupt service routine is executed and then the T-bit is set again by the exiting RTI. The traced instruction is executed (if there have been no other interrupts) and, unless it is a special case noted above, causes a trace trap.

Note that interrupts may be acknowledged immediately after the loading of the new PC and PS at the trap vector location. To lock out all interrupts, the PS at the trap vector should raise the processor priority to level 7.

**A WAIT.** The trap occurs immediately.

**A HALT.** The processor halts. When the continue key on the console is pressed, the instruction following the HALT is fetched and executed. Unless it is one of the exceptions noted above, the trap occurs immediately following execution.

**A Return from Trap.** The return from trap instruction either clears or sets the T-bit. It inhibits the trace trap. If the T-bit was set and RTT is the traced instruction the trap is delayed until completion of the next instruction.

**Power Failure Trap.** is a standard PDP-11 feature. Trap occurs whenever the AC power drops below 95 volts or outside 47 to 63 Hertz. Two milliseconds are then allowed for power down processing. Trap vector for power failure is at locations 24 and 26.

**Trap priorities.** In case multiple processor trap conditions occur simultaneously the following order of priorities is observed (from high to low):

**11/04, 11/05 & 11/10**

1. Odd Address
2. Timeout
3. Trap Instructions
4. Trace Trap
5. Power Failure

**11/35 & 11/40**

1. Odd Address
2. Fatal Stack Violation
3. Memory Management Violation
4. Timeout
5. Trap Instructions
6. Trace Trap
7. Warning Stack Violation
8. Power Failure

**11/45**

1. Odd Address
2. Fatal Stack Violation
3. Segment Violation
4. Timeout
5. Parity Error
6. Console Flag
7. Segment Management Trap
8. Warning Stack Violation
9. Power Failure

The details on the trace trap process have been described in the trace trap operational description which includes cases in which an instruction being traced causes a bus error, instruction trap, or a stack overflow trap.

If a bus error is caused by the trap process handling instruction traps, trace traps, stack overflow traps, or a previous bus error, the processor is halted.

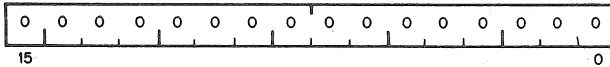
If a stack overflow is caused by the trap process in handling bus errors, instruction traps, or trace traps, the process is completed and then the stack overflow trap is sprung.

## 4.7 MISCELLANEOUS

# HALT

halt

000000



**Condition Codes:** not affected

**Description:**

Causes the processor operation to cease. The console is given control of the bus. The console data lights display the contents of R0; the console address lights display the address after the halt instruction. Transfers on the UNIBUS are terminated immediately. The PC points to the next instruction to be executed. Pressing the continue key on the console causes processor operation to resume. No INIT signal is given.

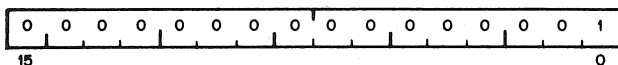
Note: A halt issued in User Mode will generate a trap.



## WAIT

wait for interrupt

000001



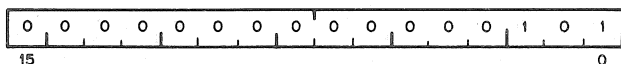
**Condition Codes:** not affected

**Description:** Provides a way for the processor to relinquish use of the bus while it waits for an external interrupt. Having been given a WAIT command, the processor will not compete for bus use by fetching instructions or operands from memory. This permits higher transfer rates between a device and memory, since no processor-induced latencies will be encountered by bus requests from the device. In WAIT, as in all instructions, the PC points to the next instruction following the WAIT operation. Thus when an interrupt causes the PC and PS to be pushed onto the processor stack, the address of the next instruction following the WAIT is saved. The exit from the interrupt routine (i.e. execution of an RTI instruction) will cause resumption of the interrupted process at the instruction following the WAIT.

# RESET

reset external bus

bus 000005



**Condition Codes:** not affected

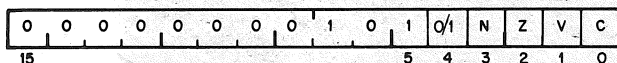
**Description:** Sends INIT on the UNIBUS. All devices on the UNIBUS are reset to their state at power up.

## Condition Code Operators

|     |     |
|-----|-----|
| CLN | SEN |
| CLZ | SEZ |
| CLV | SEV |
| CLC | SEC |
| CCC | SCC |

condition code operators

0002XX



### Description:

Set and clear condition code bits. Selectable combinations of these bits may be cleared or set together. Condition code bits corresponding to bits in the condition code operator (Bits 0-3) are modified according to the sense of bit 4, the set/clear bit of the operator. i.e. set the bit specified by bit 0, 1, 2 or 3, if bit 4 is a 1. Clear corresponding bits if bit 4 = 0.

Mnemonic  
Operation

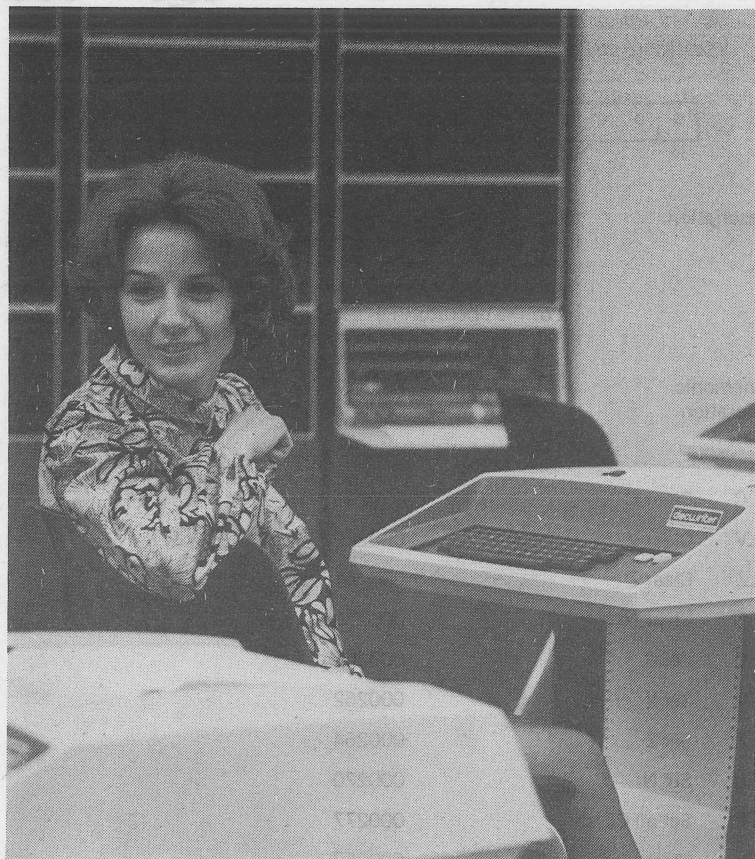
OP Code

|     |                |        |
|-----|----------------|--------|
| CLC | Clear C        | 000241 |
| CLV | Clear V        | 000242 |
| CLZ | Clear Z        | 000244 |
| CLN | Clear N        | 000250 |
| SEC | Set C          | 000261 |
| SEV | Set V          | 000262 |
| SEZ | Set Z          | 000264 |
| SEN | Set N          | 000270 |
| SCC | Set all CC's   | 000277 |
| CCC | Clear all CC's | 000257 |
|     | Clear V and C  | 000243 |
| NOP | No Operation   | 000240 |

Combinations of the above set or clear operations may be ORed together to form combined instructions.

GEN  
 SET  
 SEV  
 SEC  
 SCC  
 CLN  
 CLZ  
 CLV  
 CLC  
 CCC

Condition Code Operations



000255  
 000254  
 000253  
 000252  
 000251  
 000250

000243  
 000240

Clear V and C

NOF No Operation

Combinations of the above set or clear operations may be Obed together to form  
 combined instructions

## PROGRAMMING TECHNIQUES

In order to produce programs which fully utilize the power and flexibility of the PDP-11, the reader should become familiar with the various programming techniques which are part of the basic design philosophy of the PDP-11. Although it is possible to program the PDP-11 along traditional lines such as "accumulator orientation" this approach does not fully exploit the architecture and instruction set of the PDP-11.

**5.1 THE STACK**

A "stack", as used on the PDP-11, is an area of memory set aside by the programmer for temporary storage or subroutine/interrupt service linkage. The instructions which facilitate "stack" handling are useful features not normally found in low-cost computers. They allow a program to dynamically establish, modify, or delete a stack and items on it. The stack uses the "last-in, first-out" concept, that is, various items may be added to a stack in sequential order and retrieved or deleted from the stack in reverse order. On the PDP-11, a stack starts at the highest location reserved for it and expands linearly downward to the lowest address as items are added to the stack.

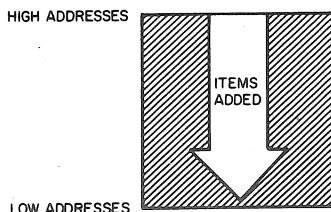


Figure 5-1: Stack Addresses

The programmer does not need to keep track of the actual locations his data is being stacked into. This is done automatically through a "stack pointer." To keep track of the last item added to the stack (or "where we are" in the stack) a General Register always contains the memory address where the last item is stored in the stack. In the PDP-11 any register except Register 7 (the Program Counter-PC) may be used as a "stack pointer" under program control; however, instructions associated with subroutine linkage and interrupt service automatically use Register 6 (R6) as a hardware "Stack Pointer." For this reason R6 is frequently referred to as the system "SP."

Stacks in the PDP-11 may be maintained in either full word or byte units. This is true for a stack pointed to by any register except R6, which must be organized in full word units only.

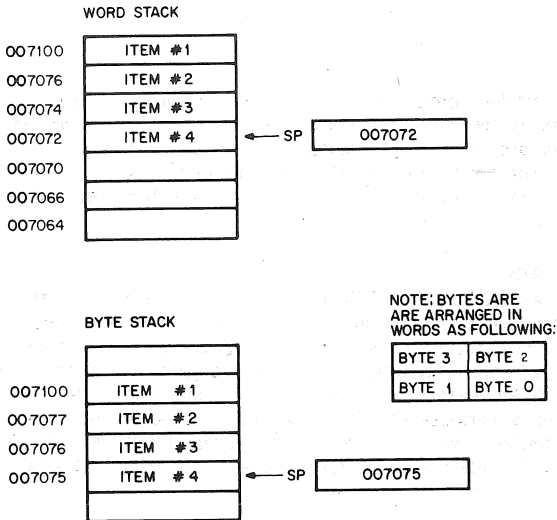


Figure 5-2: Word and Byte Stacks

Items are added to a stack using the autodecrement addressing mode with the appropriate pointer register. (See Chapter 3 for description of the autoincrement/decrement modes).

This operation is accomplished as follows;

MOV Source, -(SP)                   ;MOV Source Word onto the stack  
or

MOVB Source, -(SP)                  ;MOVB Source Byte onto the stack

This is called a "push" because data is "pushed onto the stack."

To remove an item from stack the autoincrement addressing mode with the appropriate SP is employed. This is accomplished in the following manner:

MOV (SP) + ,Destination ;MOV Destination Word off the stack

or

MOVB (SP) + ,Destination ;MOVB Destination Byte off the stack

Removing an item from a stack is called a "pop" for "popping from the stack." After an item has been "popped," its stack location is considered free and available for other use. The stack pointer points to the last-used location implying that the next (lower) location is free. Thus a stack may represent a pool of shareable temporary storage locations.

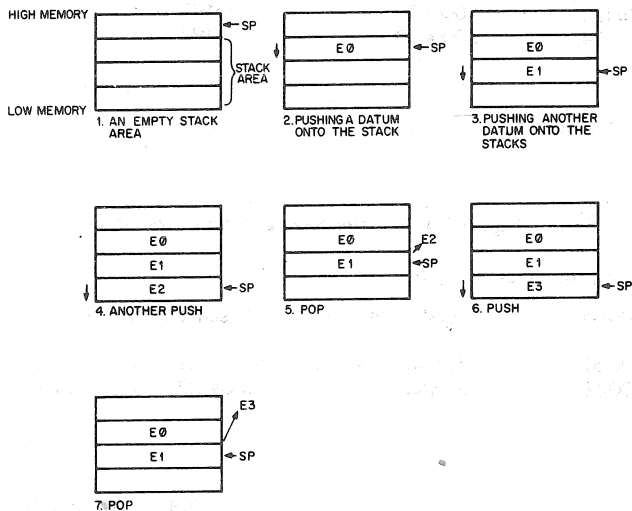


Figure 5-3: Illustration of Push and Pop Operations

As an example of stack usage consider this situation: a subroutine (SUBR) wants to use registers 1 and 2, but these registers must be returned to the calling program with their contents unchanged. The subroutine could be written as follows:

| Address | Octal Code   | Assembler Syntax          |
|---------|--------------|---------------------------|
| 076322  | 010167 SUBR: | MOV R1,TEMP1 ;save R1     |
| 076324  | 000074       | *                         |
| 076326  | 010267       | MOV R2,TEMP2 ;save R2     |
| 076330  | 000072       | *                         |
| .       | .            | .                         |
| .       | .            | .                         |
| .       | .            | .                         |
| 076410  | 016701       | MOV TEMP1, R1 ;Restore R1 |
| 076412  | 000006       | *                         |
| 076414  | 016702       | MOV TEMP2, R2 ;Restore R2 |
| 076416  | 000004       | *                         |
| 076420  | 000207       | RTS PC                    |
| 076422  | 000000       | TEMP1: 0                  |
| 076424  | 000000       | TEMP2: 0                  |

\*Index Constants

Figure 5-4: Register Saving Without the Stack

OR: Using the Stack

| Address | Octal Code   | Assembler Syntax       |
|---------|--------------|------------------------|
| 010020  | 010143 SUBR: | MOV R1, -(R3) ;push R1 |
| 010022  | 010243       | MOV R2, -(R3) ;push R2 |
| .       | .            | .                      |
| .       | .            | .                      |
| .       | .            | .                      |
| 010130  | 012301       | MOV (R3) +, R2 ;pop R2 |
| 010132  | 012302       | MOV (R3) +, R1 ;pop R1 |
| 010134  | 000207       | RTS PC                 |

Note: In this case R3 was used as a Stack Pointer

Figure 5-5: Register Saving using the Stack

The second routine uses four less words of instruction code and two words of temporary "stack" storage. Another routine could use the same stack space at some later point. Thus, the ability to share temporary storage in the form of a stack is a very economical way to save on memory usage.



As a further example of stack usage, consider the task of managing an input buffer from a terminal. As characters come in, the terminal user may wish to delete characters from his line; this is accomplished very easily by maintaining a byte stack containing the input characters. Whenever a backspace is received a character is "popped" off the stack and eliminated from consideration. In this example, a programmer has the choice of "popping" characters to be eliminated by using either the MOV<sub>B</sub> (MOVE BYTE) or INC (INCREMENT) instructions.

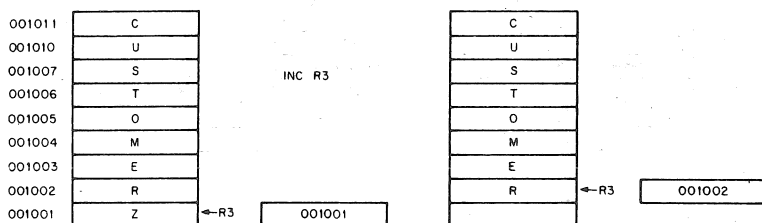


Figure 5-6: Byte Stack used as a Character Buffer

NOTE that in this case using the increment instruction (INC) is preferable to MOV<sub>B</sub> since it would accomplish the task of eliminating the unwanted character from the stack by readjusting the stack pointer without the need for a destination location. Also, the stack pointer (SP) used in this example cannot be the system stack pointer (R6) because R6 may only point to word (even) locations.

## 5.2 SUBROUTINE LINKAGE

### 5.2.1 Subroutine Calls

Subroutines provide a facility for maintaining a single copy of a given routine which can be used in a repetitive manner by other programs located anywhere else in memory. In order to provide this facility, generalized linkage methods must be established for the purpose of control transfer and information exchange between subroutines and calling programs. The PDP-11 instruction set contains several useful instructions for this purpose.

PDP-11 subroutines are called by using the JSR instruction which has the following format.

a general register (R) for linkage ———  
 JSR R, SUBR  
 an entry location (SUBR) for the subroutine ———

When a JSR is executed, the contents of the linkage register are saved on the system R6 stack as if a MOV reg,-(SP) had been performed. Then the same register is loaded with the memory address following the JSR instruction (the contents of the current PC) and a jump is made to the entry location specified.

| Address | Assembler Syntax        | Octal Code |
|---------|-------------------------|------------|
| 001000  | JSRR5,SUBR              | 004567     |
| 001002  | index constant for SUBR | 000060     |
| 001064  | SUBR: MOV A,B           | 01nnmm     |

Figure 5-7: JSR using R5

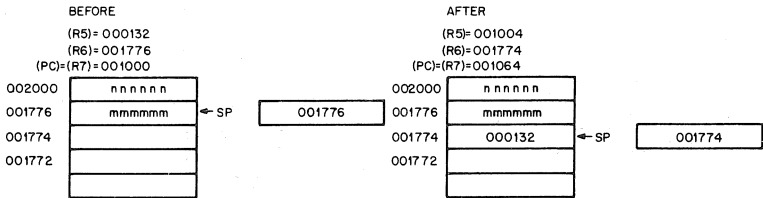


Figure 5-8: JSR

Note that the instruction JSR R6,SUBR is not normally considered to be a meaningful combination.

### 5.2.2 Argument Transmission

The memory location pointed to by the linkage register of the JSR instruction may contain arguments or addresses of arguments. These arguments may be accessed from the subroutine in several ways. Using Register 5 as the linkage register, the first argument could be obtained by using the addressing modes indicated by (R5), (R5) + ,X(R5) for actual data, or @(R5) + , etc. for the address of data. If the autoincrement mode is used, the linkage register is automatically updated to point to the next argument.

Figures 5-9 and 5-10 illustrate two possible methods of argument transmission.

#### Address Instructions and Data

|        |                         |                                         |
|--------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 010400 | JSR R5,SUBR             | SUBROUTINE CALL<br>ARGUMENTS            |
| 010402 | Index constant for SUBR |                                         |
| 010404 | arg #1                  |                                         |
| 010406 | arg #2                  |                                         |
| .      | .                       |                                         |
| .      | .                       |                                         |
| .      | .                       |                                         |
| .      | .                       |                                         |
| 020306 | SUBR: MOV (R5) + ,R1    | ;get arg #1                             |
| 020310 | MOV (R5) + ,R2          | ;get arg #2 Retrieve Arguments from SUB |

Figure 5-9; Argument Transmission -Register Autoincrement Mode

```
077722 Arg #1
077724 arg #2 arguments
077726 arg #3
```

Another method of transmitting arguments is to transmit only the address of the first item by placing this address in a general purpose register. It is not necessary to have the actual argument list in the same general area as the subroutine call. Thus a subroutine can be called to work on data located anywhere in memory. In fact, in many cases, the operations performed by the subroutine can be applied directly to the data located on or pointed to by a stack without the need to ever actually move this data into the subroutine area.

```
SUBROUTINE  ADD      (R1)+,(R1)  ;Add item # 1 to item # 2, place
                                result in item # 2, R1 points
                                to item # 2 now
```

etc.  
or

|          |      |  |
|----------|------|--|
| ITEM # 1 | ← R1 |  |
| ITEM # 2 |      |  |
|          |      |  |
|          |      |  |

5-7

Because the PDP-11 hardware already uses general purpose register R6 to point to a stack for saving and restoring PC and PS (processor status word) information, it is quite convenient to use this same stack to save and restore intermediate results and to transmit arguments to and from subroutines. Using R6 in this manner permits extreme flexibility in nesting subroutines and interrupt service routines.

Since arguments may be obtained from the stack by using some form of register indexed addressing, it is sometimes useful to save a temporary copy of R6 in some other register which has already been saved at the beginning of a subroutine. In the previous example R5 may be used to index the arguments while R6 is free to be incremented and decremented in the course of being used as a stack pointer. If R6 had been used directly as the base for indexing and not "copied", it might be difficult to keep track of the position in the argument list since the base of the stack would change with every autoincrement/decrement which occurs.



Figure 5-12: Shifting Indexed Base

However, if the contents of R6 (SP) are saved in R5 before any arguments are pushed onto the stack, the position relative to R5 would remain constant.



Figure 5-13: Constant Index Base Using "R6 Copy"

### 5.2.3 Subroutine Return

In order to provide for a return from a subroutine to the calling program an RTS instruction is executed by the subroutine. This instruction should specify the same register as the JSR used in the subroutine call. When executed, it causes the register specified to be moved to the PC and the top of the stack to be then placed in the register specified. Note that if an RTS PC is executed, it has the effect of returning to the address specified on the top of the stack.

Note that the JSR and the JMP Instructions differ in that a linkage register is always used with a JSR; there is no linkage register with a JMP and no way to return to the calling program.

When a subroutine finishes, it is necessary to "clean-up" the stack by eliminating or skipping over the subroutine arguments. One way this can be done is by insisting that the subroutine keep the number of arguments as its first stack item. Returns from subroutines would then involve calculating the amount by which to reset the stack pointer, resetting the stack pointer, then restoring the original contents of the register which was used as the copy of the stack pointer. The PDP-11/40, however, has a much faster and simpler method of performing these tasks. The MARK instruction which is stored on a stack in place of "number of argument" information may be used to automatically perform these "clean-up" chores.

### 5.2.4 PDP-11 Subroutine Advantages

There are several advantages to the PDP-11 subroutine calling procedure.

- a. arguments can be quickly passed between the calling program and the subroutine.
- b. if the user has no arguments or the arguments are in a general register or on the stack the JSR PC,DST mode can be used so that none of the general purpose registers are taken up for linkage.
- c. many JSR's can be executed without the need to provide any saving procedure for the linkage information since all linkage information is automatically pushed onto the stack in sequential order. Returns can simply be made by automatically popping this information from the stack in the opposite order of the JSR's.

Such linkage address bookkeeping is called automatic "nesting" of subroutine calls. This feature enables the programmer to construct fast, efficient linkages in a simple, flexible manner. It even permits a routine to call itself in those cases where this is meaningful. Other ramifications will appear after we examine the PDP-11 interrupt procedures.

## 5.3 INTERRUPTS

### 5.3.1 General Principles

Interrupts are in many respects very similar to subroutine calls. However, they are forced, rather than controlled, transfers of program execution occurring because of some external and program-independent event (such as a stroke on the teleprinter keyboard). Like subroutines, interrupts have linkage information such

that a return to the interrupted program can be made. More information is actually necessary for an interrupt transfer than a subroutine transfer because of the random nature of interrupts. The complete machine state of the program immediately prior to the occurrence of the interrupt must be preserved in order to return to the program without any noticeable effects. (i.e. was the previous operation zero or negative, etc.) This information is stored in the Processor Status Word (PS). Upon interrupt, the contents of the Program Counter (PC) (address of next instruction) and the PS are automatically pushed onto the R6 system stack. The effect is the same as if:

```
MOV PS, -(SP)      ; Push PS
MOV R7, -(SP)      ; Push PC
```

had been executed.

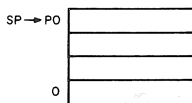
The new contents of the PC and PS are loaded from two preassigned consecutive memory locations which are called an "interrupt vector". The actual locations are chosen by the device interface designer and are located in low memory addresses of Kernel virtual space (see interrupt vector list, Appendix B). The first word contains the interrupt service routine address (the address of the new program sequence) and the second word contains the new PS which will determine the machine status including the operational mode and register set to be used by the interrupt service routine. The contents of the interrupt service vector are set under program control.

After the interrupt service routine has been completed, an RTI (return from interrupt) is performed. The two top words of the stack are automatically "popped" and placed in the PC and PS respectively, thus resuming the interrupted program.

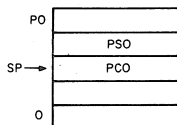
### 5.3.2 Nesting

Interrupts can be nested in much the same manner that subroutines are nested. In fact, it is possible to nest any arbitrary mixture of subroutines and interrupts without any confusion. By using the RTI and RTS instructions, respectively, the proper returns are automatic.

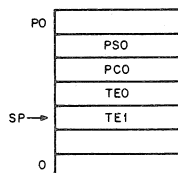
1. Process 0 is running;  
SP is pointing to location P0.



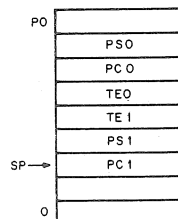
2. Interrupt stops process 0  
with PC = PC0, and  
status = PS0 ;starts process 1.



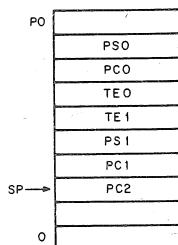
3. Process 1 uses stack for temporary storage (TE0, TE1).



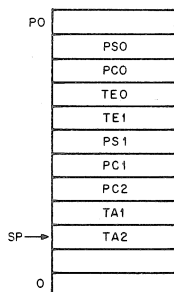
4. Process 1 interrupted with PC = PC1 and status = PS1; process 2 is started



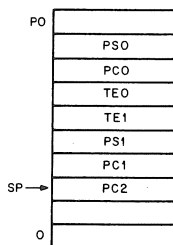
5. Process 2 is running and does a JSR R7,A to Subroutine A with PC = PC2.



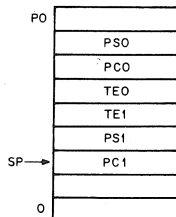
6. Subroutine A is running and uses stack for temporary storage.



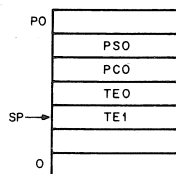
7. Subroutine A releases the temporary storage holding TA1 and TA2.



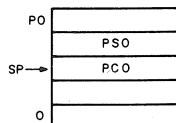
8. Subroutine A returns control to process 2 with an RTS R7, PC is reset to PC2.



9. Process 2 completes with an RTI instruction (dismisses interrupt) PC is reset to PC(1) and status is reset to PS1; process 1 resumes.



10. Process 1 releases the temporary storage holding TE0 and TE1.



11. Process 1 completes its operation with an RTI PC is reset to PC0 and status is reset to PS0.

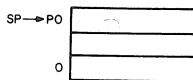


Figure 5-14: Nested Interrupt Service Routines and Subroutines

Note that the area of interrupt service programming is intimately involved with the concept of CPU and device priority levels.



## 5.4 REENTRANCY

Further advantages of stack organization become apparent in complex situations which can arise in program systems that are engaged in the concurrent handling of several tasks. Such multi-task program environments may range from relatively simple single-user applications which must manage an intermix of I/O interrupt service and background computation to large complex multi-programming systems which manage a very intricate mixture of executive and multi-user programming situations. In all these applications there is a need for flexibility and time/memory economy. The use of the stack provides this economy and flexibility by providing a method for allowing many tasks to use a single copy of the same routine and a simple, unambiguous method for keeping track of complex program linkages.

The ability to share a single copy of a given program among users or tasks is called reentrancy. Reentrant program routines differ from ordinary subroutines in that it is unnecessary for reentrant routines to finish processing a given task before they can be used by another task. Multiple tasks can be in various stages of completion in the same routine at any time. Thus the following situation may occur:

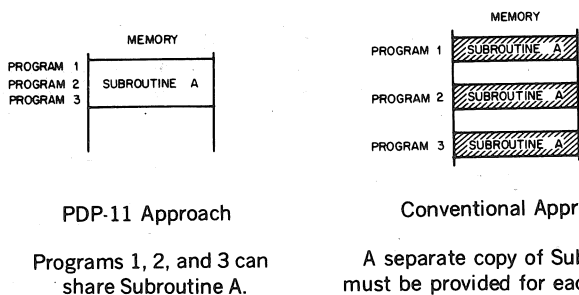


Figure 5-15: Reentrant Routines

The chief programming distinction between a non-shareable routine and a reentrant routine is that the reentrant routine is composed solely of "pure code", i.e. it contains only instructions and constants. Thus, a section of program code is reentrant (shareable) if and only if it is "non self-modifying", that is it contains no information within it that is subject to modification.

Using reentrant routines, control of a given routine may be shared as illustrated in Figure 5-16.

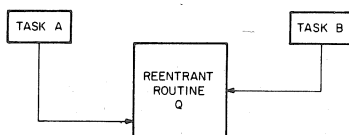


Figure 5-16: Reentrant Routine Sharing

1. Task A has requested processing by Reentrant Routine Q.
2. Task A temporarily relinquishes control (is interrupted) of Reentrant Routine Q before it finishes processing.
3. Task B starts processing in the same copy of Reentrant Routine Q.
4. Task B relinquishes control of Reentrant Routine Q at some point in its processing.
5. Task A regains control of Reentrant Routine Q and resumes processing from where it stopped.

The use of reentrant programming allows many tasks to share frequently used routines such as device interrupt service routines, ASCII-Binary conversion routines, etc. In fact, in a multi-user system it is possible for instance, to construct a reentrant FORTRAN compiler which can be used as a single copy by many user programs.

As an application of reentrant (shareable) code, consider a data processing program which is interrupted while executing a ASCII-to-Binary subroutine which has been written as a reentrant routine. The same conversion routine is used by the device service routine. When the device servicing is finished, a return from interrupt (RTI) is executed and execution for the processing program is then resumed where it left off inside the same ASCII-to-Binary subroutine.

Shareable routines generally result in great memory saving. It is the hardware implemented stack facility of the PDP-11 that makes shareable or reentrant routines reasonable.

A subroutine may be reentered by a new task before its completion by the previous task as long as the new execution does not destroy any linkage information or intermediate results which belong to the previous programs. This usually amounts to saving the contents of any general purpose registers, to be used and restoring them upon exit. The choice of whether to save and restore this information in the calling program or the subroutine is quite arbitrary and depends on the particular application. For example in controlled transfer situations (i.e. JSR's) a main program which calls a code-conversion utility might save the contents of registers which it needs and restore them after it has regained control, or the code conversion routine might save the contents of registers which it uses and restore them upon its completion. In the case of interrupt service routines this save/restore process must be carried out by the service routine itself since the interrupted program has no warning of an impending interrupt. The advantage of

using the stack to save and restore (i.e. "push" and "pop") this information is that it permits a program to isolate its instructions and data and thus maintain its reentrancy.

In the case of a reentrant program which is used in a multi-programming environment it is usually necessary to maintain a separate R6 stack for each user although each such stack would be shared by all the tasks of a given user. For example, if a reentrant FORTRAN compiler is to be shared between many users, each time the user is changed, R6 would be set to point to a new user's stack area as illustrated in Figure 5-17.

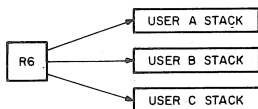


Figure 5-17: Multiple R6 Stack

### 5.5 POSITION INDEPENDENT CODE - PIC

Most programs are written with some direct references to specific addresses, if only as an offset from an absolute address origin. When it is desired to relocate these programs in memory, it is necessary to change the address references and/or the origin assignments. Such programs are constrained to a specific set of locations. However, the PDP-11 architecture permits programs to be constructed such that they are not constrained to specific locations. These Position Independent programs do not directly reference any absolute locations in memory. Instead all references are "PC-relative" i.e. locations are referenced in terms of offsets from the current location (offsets from the current value of the Program Counter (PC)). When such a program has been translated to machine code it will form a program module which can be loaded anywhere in memory as required.

Position Independent Code is exceedingly valuable for those utility routines which may be disk-resident and are subject to loading in a dynamically changing program environment. The supervisory program may load them anywhere it determines without the need for any relocation parameters since all items remain in the same positions relative to each other (and thus also to the PC).

Linkages to program routines which have been written in position independent code (PIC) must still be absolute in some manner. Since these routines can be located anywhere in memory there must be some fixed or readily locatable linkage addresses to facilitate access to these routines. This linkage address may be a simple pointer located at a fixed address or it may be a complex vector composed of numerous linkage information items.

## 5.6 CO-ROUTINES

In some situations it happens that two program routines are highly interactive. Using a special case of the JSR instruction i.e. JSR PC,@(R6) + which exchanges the top element of the Register 6 processor stack and the contents of the Program Counter (PC), two routines may be permitted to swap program control and resume operation where they stopped, when recalled. Such routines are called "co-routines". This control swapping is illustrated in Figure 5-18.

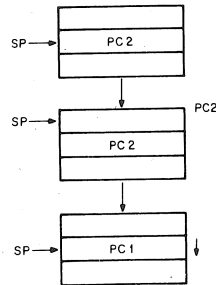
Routine #1 is operating, it then executes:

MOV #PC2,-(R6)

JSR PC,@(R6) +

with the following results:

- 1) PC2 is popped from the stack and the SP autoincremented
- 2) SP is autodecremented and the old PC (i.e. PC1) is pushed
- 3) control is transferred to the location PC2 (i.e. routine #2)



Routine #2 is operating, it then executes:

JSR PC ,@(R6) +

with the result the PC2 is exchanged for PC1 on the stack and control is transferred back to routine #1.

Figure 5-18 - Co-Routine Interaction

## **5.7 PROCESSOR TRAPS**

There are a series of errors and programming conditions which will cause the Central Processor to trap to a set of fixed locations. These include Power Failure, Odd Addressing Errors, Stack Errors, Timeout Errors, Memory Parity Errors, Memory Management Violations, Floating Point Processor Exception Traps, Use of Reserved Instructions, Use of the T bit in the Processor Status Word, and use of the IOT, EMT, and TRAP instructions.

### **5.7.1 Power Failure**

Whenever AC power drops below 95 volts for 115v power (190 volts for 230v) or outside a limit of 47 to 63 Hz, as measured by DC power, the power fail sequence is initiated. The Central Processor automatically traps to location 24 and the power fail program has 2 msec. to save all volatile information (data in registers), and condition peripherals for power fail.

When power is restored the processor traps to location 24 and executes the power up routine to restore the machine to its state prior to power failure.

### **5.7.2 Odd Addressing Errors**

This error occurs whenever a program attempts to execute a word instruction on an odd address (in the middle of a word boundary). The instruction is aborted and the CPU traps through location 4.

### **5.7.3 Time-out Errors**

These errors occur when a Master Synchronization pulse is placed on the UNIBUS and there is no slave pulse within a certain length of time. This error usually occurs in attempts to address non-existent memory or peripherals.

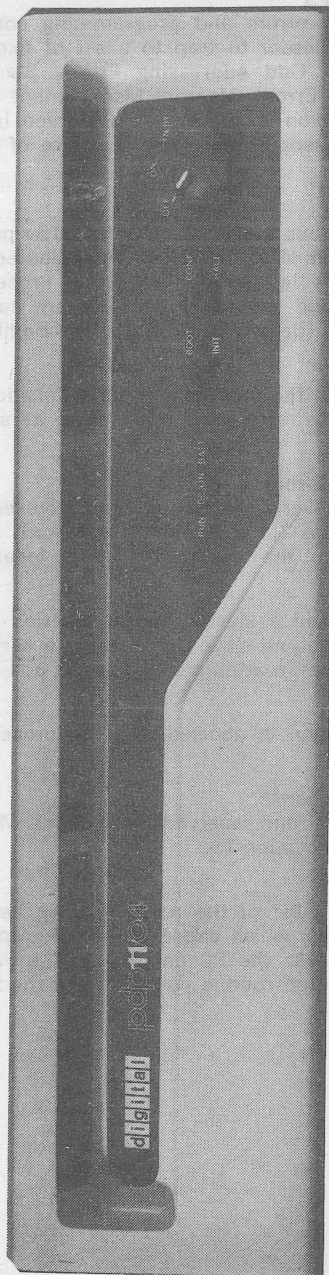
The offending instruction is aborted and the processor traps through location 4.

### **5.7.4 Reserved Instructions**

There is a set of illegal and reserved instructions which cause the processor to trap through location 10.

### **5.7.5 Trap Handling**

Appendix B includes a list of the reserved Trap Vector locations, and System Error Definitions which cause processor traps. When a trap occurs, the processor saves the PC and PS on the Processor Stack and begins to execute the trap routine pointed to by the trap vector.



## CHAPTER 6

### PDP-11/04

#### 6.1 DESCRIPTION

##### CPU

The PDP-11/04 is a full scale PDP-11 computer that uses MOS memory in 4K to 28K word configurations. The central processor fits on a single hex module, which is program compatible with the PDP-11/05. It also provides all of the processing capability of the PDP-11/05 at a significantly higher speed.

##### Memory

The MOS memory is implemented with industry standard 4K RAMs and is offered on a single hex module containing 4K to 16K 16-bit words. The MOS UNIBUS memory is physically interchangeable with hex SPC circuit boards and can therefore be installed in any location within the backplane except the CPU slot. The MOS refresh circuits are contained on the MOS memory module and have been partitioned on separate buses to allow battery back-up.

##### ASCII Console

In order to replace the functions normally controlled through a programmer's console, a Read Only Memory (ROM) program has been included, which contains routines that replace Load, Examine, Deposit, and Start functions. This feature gives full programmer's console capability when a serial I/O terminal, (VT50, LA36 or Teletype) and controller are added to the system. Bootstrap commands can also be generated from the ASCII keyboard.

##### ROM Hardware Diagnostic

Another program in ROM automatically tests certain CPU instructions to verify if a diagnostic can be loaded or a bootstrap operation performed. It also tests all of memory (up to 28K) just prior to calling a bootstrap program.

##### Hardware Bootstraps

Bootstrap programs for all major peripheral devices (paper tape, magnetic tape, moving head disks, and floppy disks) are implemented in ROM. The system device can be booted by 3 techniques:

1. Automatically on a power up condition.
2. Manually by depressing the "BOOT" switch on the operator's console.
3. Manually by issuing a bootstrap command from an ASCII terminal device.

##### Packaging

The PDP-11/04 is available in 2 basic configurations, both of which use 5 $\frac{1}{4}$ " of front panel height; see Figure 6-1. There is slot independence,

meaning memory and small peripheral controllers can plug in anywhere they fit. But the CPU always terminates one end of the UNIBUS and normally plugs into the top slot.

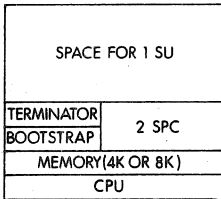
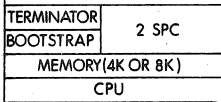
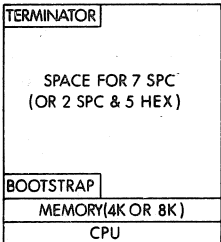
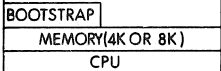
| <u>OPTION NUMBER</u> | <u>DIAGRAM OF CPU ASSEMBLY</u>                                                    | <u>INCLUDED EQUIPMENT</u> | <u>EXPANSION CAPABILITY</u> |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 11/04-AA<br>(AB)     |  | 11/04 CPU<br>4K OR 8K MOS | 1 SU<br>2 SPC               |
| 11/04-BA<br>(BB)     |  |                           |                             |
| 11/04-AC<br>(AD)     |  | 11/04 CPU<br>4K OR 8K MOS | 7 SPC                       |
| 11/04-BC<br>(BD)     |  |                           |                             |

Figure 6-1 PDP-11/04 CPU Diagrams

## 6.2 PDP-11/04 OPTIONS

### Programmer's Console

The PDP-11/04 programmer's console provides all of the functions presently offered with the PDP-11/05. The programmer's console interfaces to the UNIBUS via a quad SPC module. The programmer's console contains a seven segment LED display as well as a 19-key pad for generating the console commands.

### Battery Back-Up

The battery back-up option will provide a refresh current to 32K words of memory for up to 2 hours. The battery backup unit is physically mounted outside of the processor box to facilitate battery maintenance.



## 6.3 SPECIFICATIONS

### Components Parts

A basic PDP-11/04 includes:

- a) central processor
- b) 4K words of MOS memory
- c) 5 $\frac{1}{4}$ " CPU mounting box with slides
- d) power supply
- e) hardware bootstrap loader
- f) ROM hardware diagnostic
- g) operator's panel
- h) jacks for external battery backup
- i) expansion space for additional memory or peripheral controllers
- j) ASCII console program

### Computer

PDP-11/04

### Memory

|              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| Min size:    | 4K words      |
| Max size:    | 28K           |
| Type:        | MOS           |
| Access time: | 500 nsec, typ |
| Cycle time:  | 725 nsec, typ |

### Central Processor

|                           |           |
|---------------------------|-----------|
| Instructions:             | basic set |
| Programming modes:        | 1         |
| No. of general registers: | 8         |
| Auto hardware interrupts: | yes       |
| Auto software interrupts: | no        |
| Power fail/auto restart:  | yes       |

### Mechanical & Environmental

|                        |                                                                        |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Size (HxWxD):          | 5 $\frac{1}{4}$ " x 19" x 25"                                          |
| Weight:                | 45 lbs.                                                                |
| Input power:           | 115 VAC $\pm$ 10%, 47-63 Hz, or<br>230 VAC $\pm$ 10%, 47-63 Hz<br>350W |
| Operating temperature: | 10°C to 50°C                                                           |
| Relative humidity:     | 20% to 95%, non-condensing                                             |

### Optional Equipment

- Real-time clock
- Programmer's console
- I/O serial interface
- Battery backup

#### **6.4 OPERATOR'S CONSOLE OPERATION**

A minimal function operator's console is offered as the standard front panel on the PDP-11/04. The following switches and indicators are provided:

- Power control switch
- Bootstrap loader switch
- Halt/continue switch
- DC-On indicator
- RUN indicator
- BATTERY LO indicator

The Continue switch is a new feature on operators' consoles. It enables continuation after a programmed or inadvertent halt, without having to re-boot.

## CHAPTER 7

### PDP-11/05 & 11/10

#### 7.1 DESCRIPTION

The PDP-11/05 and PDP-11/10 are small PDP-11 computers that use core memory in 4K to 28K word configurations. Front panel height is either  $5\frac{1}{4}$ " or  $10\frac{1}{2}$ " for the PDP-11/05 and  $10\frac{1}{2}$ " for the PDP-11/10. The computers are available in 3 basic configurations, see Figure 7-1.

#### 7.2 INTERNAL CPU EQUIPMENT

##### **SCL, Serial Communication Line Interface**

The SCL interface is contained on one of the CPU modules. The interface is program compatible with the DL11-A, DEC's standard serial interface option, and can handle speeds up to 2,400 baud. Specifically it can control:

DECwriter, LA36, up to 30 characters/sec

Alpha-numeric Terminal, VT50, up to 240 characters/sec

Teletype, up to 10 characters/sec

The SCL interface is not connected to the UNIBUS; it is connected to the CPU by an internal bus. This means that there can be no NPR transfers on the SCL.

##### **LTC, Line Time Clock**

The clock is contained on one of the CPU modules. It is program compatible with the KW11-L, DEC's standard line clock option. The clock senses the 50 or 60 Hz line frequency for internal timing.

##### **Power Supply**

The power supply can be operated from either 115 VAC or 230 VAC by a simple change of the power control (within the power supply assembly). The power supply has enough capacity to handle the CPU, 8K of memory, plus additional memory and optional equipment that can mount within the CPU assembly unit.

### 7.3 SPECIFICATIONS

|                                       |                                                                            |                               |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>Computer</b>                       | PDP-11/05                                                                  | PDP-11/10<br>(when different) |
| <b>Main Market</b>                    | OEM                                                                        | End User                      |
| <b>Memory</b>                         |                                                                            |                               |
| Min size:                             | 4K words                                                                   | 8K                            |
| Max size:                             | 28K                                                                        |                               |
| Type:                                 | core                                                                       |                               |
| Parity:                               | no                                                                         |                               |
| <b>Central Processor:</b>             |                                                                            |                               |
| Instructions:                         | basic set                                                                  |                               |
| Programming modes:                    | 1                                                                          |                               |
| No. of general registers:             | 8                                                                          |                               |
| Auto hardware interrupts:             | yes                                                                        |                               |
| Auto software interrupts:             | no                                                                         |                               |
| Power fail/auto restart:              | yes                                                                        |                               |
| <b>Mechanical &amp; Environmental</b> |                                                                            |                               |
| Front panel height:                   | 5 1/4" or 10 1/2"                                                          | 10 1/2"                       |
| Weight:                               | 50 lbs or 110 lbs                                                          | 110 lbs                       |
| Input power:                          | 115 VAC $\pm 10\%$ , 47-63 Hz, or<br>230 VAC $\pm 10\%$ , 47-63 Hz<br>500W |                               |
| Operating temperature:                | 10°C to 50°C                                                               |                               |
| Relative humidity:                    | 20% to 95%, non-condensing                                                 |                               |
| <b>Equipment</b>                      |                                                                            |                               |
| I/O serial interface:                 | yes                                                                        |                               |
| Console terminal:                     | optional                                                                   |                               |
| Line frequency clock:                 | yes                                                                        |                               |
| Hardware bootstrap:                   | optional                                                                   |                               |
| Programmer's console:                 | yes                                                                        |                               |
| Extended arithmetic:                  | optional                                                                   |                               |
| Floating point:                       | software only                                                              |                               |
| Stack limit address:                  | 400 (fixed)                                                                |                               |
| Memory management:                    | not available                                                              |                               |
| Cabinet:                              | optional                                                                   |                               |

| <u>OPTION<br/>NUMBER</u> | <u>DIAGRAM OF<br/>CPU ASSEMBLY</u> | <u>INCLUDED<br/>EQUIPMENT</u> | <u>EXPANSION<br/>CAPABILITY</u> |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 11/05- KA<br>(KB)        |                                    | 11/05 CPU<br>4K OR 8K CORE    | 4 SPC                           |
| 11/05- LA<br>(LB)        |                                    |                               |                                 |
| 11/05 -NC<br>(ND)        |                                    | 11/05 CPU<br>8K CORE          | 3 SU                            |
| 11/10 -NC<br>(ND)        |                                    |                               |                                 |
| 11/10 -SC<br>(SD)        |                                    | 11/05 CPU<br>16K CORE         | 3 SU<br>3 SPC                   |
| 11/10-SC<br>(SD)         |                                    |                               |                                 |

Figure 7-1 PDP-11/05 & 11/10 CPU Diagrams

EXPANSION  
CAPACITY

3 20

3 20

3 20  
3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

3 20

OPTION  
NUMBER

11V03-KA  
(R)

11V03-LA  
(L)

11V03-NC  
(N)

11V10-NC  
(N)

11V10-2C  
(2)

11V10-2C  
(2)

Figure 7-1

## 7.4 PDP-11/05 & 11/10 CONSOLE OPERATION

### 7.4.1 Console Elements

The PDP-11/05 and 11/10 Operator's Console provides the following facilities:

Power Switch (with a key lock)

ADDRESS/DATA display (16 bits)

Switch Register (16 switches)

RUN status light

Control Switches

LOAD ADRS (Load Address)

EXAM (Examine)

CONT (Continue)

ENABLE/HALT

START

DEP (Deposit)

### 7.4.2 Console Switches

POWER { OFF

Power to the processor is off.

{ POWER

Power to the processor is on and all console Switches function normally.

{ PANEL LOCK

Power to the processor is on, but the Control Switches are disabled. The Switch Register is still functional.

Switch Register

( Up = 1)

(Down = 0)

Used to manually load data or an address into the processor.

### Control Switches

LOAD ADRS

(depress to activate)

Transfers contents of the Switch Register to the processor.

The entered data is displayed in the ADDRESS/DATA lights, and provides an address for EXAM, DEP, and START.

## EXAM

Causes the contents of the selected location to be displayed in the ADDRESS/DATA lights. While the EXAM switch is depressed, the address to be examined is displayed. The data itself is displayed when the switch is released.

If the EXAM switch is depressed again, the contents of the next sequential word location are displayed. (Bus Address is incremented automatically). If an odd address is specified, the next lower even address word will be displayed (except for the general registers, R0 to R7). If a non-existent memory address is specified, no UNIBUS operation will be performed, and the processor will have to be initialized by setting the ENABLE/HALT switch to HALT and then depressing the START switch.

If the CPU is in the RUN state, the EXAM switch has no effect.

## CONT

(depress and release to activate)

Causes the processor to continue operation from the point at which it had stopped. The switch has no effect when the CPU is in the RUN state. If the program had stopped, this switch provides a restart without a System Reset.

## ENABLE/HALT

{ ENABLE  
  HALT

Allows the CPU to perform normal operations under program control.

Causes the CPU to stop after the current instruction. All interrupts and traps will be executed prior to halting. Depressing and then releasing the CONT switch will now cause execution of a single instruction.

## START

(depress and release to activate)

If the program had stopped, depressing the START switch causes a System Reset signal to occur and loads the Program Counter with the address contained in the switches when LOAD ADRS was last depressed. The program will then continue only if the ENABLE/HALT switch is in ENABLE.

### WARNING:

If the CPU is in the RUN state and the POWER switch is *not* in PANEL LOCK, the START switch will interrupt the program. The program may even have to be reloaded.



## DEP

Deposits contents of the Switch Register into the selected location. While the DEP switch is raised, the address to be loaded is displayed. When the switch is released, the data deposited is displayed.

If the DEP switch is raised again, the Switch Register contents (which were probably modified) are loaded into the next word location. (Bus Address is incremented automatically). If an odd address is specified, the next lower even address word will be used (except for the general registers, R0 to R7). If a non-existent memory address is specified, no UNIBUS operation will be completed and the processor will have to be initialized by setting the ENABLE/HALT switch to HALT and then depressing the START switch.

### 7.4.3 Indicators

## RUN

Lights when the processor is executing instructions. It is off when the processor is halted. It is on during a WAIT instruction and UNIBUS cycles.

## ADDRESS/DATA

Displays either addresses or data, as specified in Table 7-1.

**Table 7-1 Information Displayed in ADDRESS/DATA Lights**

| Condition         |                                                                                                       | ADDRESS/DATA Display                                                     |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| POWER On          | ENABLE/HALT in HALT                                                                                   | Contents of location 24.                                                 |
|                   | ENABLE/HALT in ENABLE                                                                                 | Undefined. Depends on contents of memory.                                |
| Load Address      | LOAD ADRS switch is depressed                                                                         | Contents of Switch Register.                                             |
| Examine           | EXAM switch is depressed                                                                              | Address of location that is to be examined.                              |
|                   | EXAM switch is released                                                                               | Contents of selected address.                                            |
| Deposit           | DEP switch is raised                                                                                  | Address of location that is to be loaded.                                |
|                   | DEP switch is released                                                                                | Contents of Switch Register (which is the data deposited).               |
| RUN Light On      |                                                                                                       | Undefined.                                                               |
| Program Halt      | ENABLE/HALT in HALT                                                                                   | Address of instruction to be executed when CONT switch is activated.     |
|                   | HALT instruction executed                                                                             | (same as above)                                                          |
|                   | Double Bus Error (two successive attempts to access non-existent memory or improper odd byte address) | Contents of Program Counter (R7) at time when double bus error occurred. |
| Program Execution | START switch is depressed                                                                             | Address of last Load address.                                            |
|                   | CONT switch is depressed                                                                              | Address of instruction to be executed.                                   |

# PDP-11/35 & 11/40

### 8.1 DESCRIPTION

The PDP-11/35 and PDP-11/40 computer systems can contain up to 124K words of memory. The PDP-11/35 is housed in a 10½" or 21" high unit; the PDP-11/40 is in a 21" high unit. The computers in 21" units include a cabinet.

The PDP-11/35 and 11/40 are the systems-level computers that allow increased memory expansion, memory relocation and protection, faster processing speeds, and an array of special hardware options for more powerful operations.

### 8.2 PDP-11/35 & 11/40 OPTIONS

The central processor is prewired to accept the following options:

- Extended Instruction Set, KE11-E
- Floating Point, KE11-F
- Memory Management, KT11-D
- Programmable Stack Limit, KJ11-A
- Real Time Clock, KW11-L
- I/O Terminal Control, DL11 or LC11

#### Extended Instruction Set & Floating Point Options

The Extended Instruction Set (EIS) option provides the capability of performing hardware fixed point arithmetic and allows direct implementation of multiply, divide, and multiple shifting. A double-precision 32-bit word can be handled.

The Floating Point Unit uses the EIS as a prerequisite. This option enables the execution of 4 special instructions for floating point addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. The EIS and Floating Point hardware provide significant time and coding improvement over comparable software routines.

The Floating Point Unit functions as an integral part of the PDP-11 processor, not as a bus device.

### Memory Management Option

Memory Management is an advanced memory extension, relocation, and protection feature which will:

- Extend memory space from 28K to 124K words
- Allow efficient segmentation of core for multi-user environments
- Provide effective protection of memory segments in multi-user environments

With this option the machine operates in two modes; Kernel and User. When the machine is in Kernel mode a program has complete control of the machine; when in User mode the processor is inhibited from executing certain instructions and can be denied direct access to the peripherals on the system. This hardware feature can be used to provide complete executive protection in a multi-programming environment. A software operating system can insure that no user (who is operating in User mode) can cause a failure (crash) of the entire system. Full control of the entire system is retained at the console or by an operator who is in Kernel mode.

Bits 12 through 15 of the Processor Status word, see Figure 8-1, are used with the Memory Management option. Mode information includes the present mode, either Kernel or User (bits 15,14) and the mode the machine was in prior to the last interrupt or trap (bits 13,12).

### Stack Limit Option

This option allows program control of the lower limit for permissible stack addresses. The normal boundary without this option is  $(400)_{16}$ . If the program attempts to exceed this limit for stack addresses, an indication is given to the program by means of a trap.

The Stack Limit option is included with the Memory Management option.

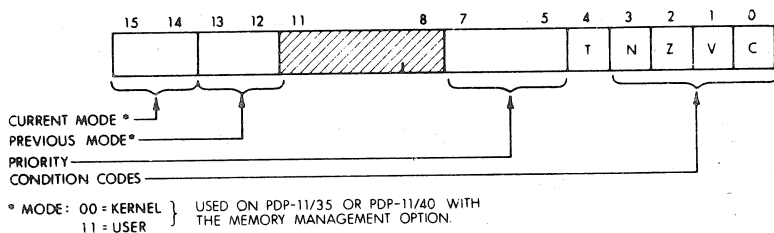


Figure 8-1 Processor Status Word

### 8.3 SPECIFICATIONS

|                                       |                                      |                            |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>Computer</b>                       | PDP-11/35                            | PDP-11/40 (when different) |
| <b>Main Market</b>                    | OEM                                  | End User                   |
| <b>Memory</b>                         |                                      |                            |
| Min size:                             | 8K words                             | 16K                        |
| Max size:                             | 124K                                 |                            |
| Type:                                 | core                                 |                            |
| Parity:                               | optional                             | standard                   |
| <b>Central Processor</b>              |                                      |                            |
| Instructions:                         | basic set + XOR, SOB, MARK, SXT, RTT |                            |
| Programming modes:                    | 1 std, 2 opt                         |                            |
| No. of general registers:             | 8                                    |                            |
| Auto hardware interrupts:             | yes                                  |                            |
| Auto software interrupts:             | no                                   |                            |
| Power fail/auto restart:              | yes                                  |                            |
| <b>Mechanical &amp; Environmental</b> |                                      |                            |
| Front panel height:                   | 10½" or 21"                          | 21"                        |
| Weight:                               | 115 VAC ± 10%, 47-63 Hz, or          |                            |
| Input power:                          | 230 VAC ± 10%, 47-63 Hz              |                            |
|                                       | 700W                                 |                            |
| Operating temperature:                | 5°C to 50°C                          |                            |
| Relative humidity:                    | 20% to 95%, non-condensing           |                            |
| <b>Equipment</b>                      |                                      |                            |
| I/O serial interface:                 | optional                             | standard                   |
| Console terminal:                     | optional                             | standard                   |
| Line frequency clock:                 | optional                             |                            |
| Hardware bootstrap:                   | optional                             |                            |
| Programmer's console:                 | standard                             |                            |
| Extended arithmetic:                  | optional                             |                            |
| Floating point:                       | optional                             |                            |
| Stack limit address:                  | 400 or programmable (option)         |                            |
| Memory management:                    | option MFPI, MTPI                    |                            |
| Cabinet:                              | optional                             | standard                   |
|                                       | with 10½" units                      |                            |

| <u>OPTION<br/>NUMBER</u> | <u>DIAGRAM OF<br/>CPU ASSEMBLY</u> | <u>INCLUDED<br/>EQUIPMENT</u>                                             | <u>EXPANSION<br/>CAPABILITY</u> |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 11/35 - JA<br>(JB)       |                                    | 11/35 CPU<br>8K CORE                                                      | 1 SU<br>1 SPC                   |
| 11/35 - SC<br>(SD)       |                                    | 11/35 CPU<br>16 K CORE                                                    | 1 SU<br>1 SPC                   |
| 11/40 - B                |                                    | 11/40 CPU<br>16K PARITY CORE<br>TERMINAL DL11-A<br>TERM. CONT.<br>CABINET | 5 SU                            |

Figure 8-2 PDP-11/35 & 11/40 CPU  
Diagrams

## 8.4 ARITHMETIC OPTIONS (FOR THE 11/35 & 11/40)

### 8.4.1 GENERAL

Two options which mount in the 11/35 or 11/40 Central Processor assembly unit are described. The Extended Instruction Set (EIS) option allows extended manipulation of fixed point numbers. The Floating Point option (which requires the EIS option) enables direct operations on single precision 32-bit words.

The options are contained on individual modules that plug into dedicated, prewired slots.

KE11-E      EIS option  
KE11-F      Floating Point option

The basic processor timing is not degraded, and NPR latency is not affected by the use of these options.

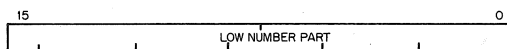
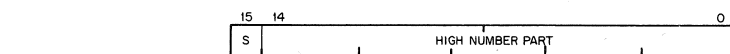
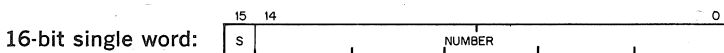
### 8.4.2 EIS OPTION

The Extended Instruction Set option adds the following instruction capability:

| <u>Mnemonic</u> | <u>Instruction</u>        | <u>Op Code</u> |
|-----------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| MUL             | multiply                  | 070RSS         |
| DIV             | divide                    | 071RSS         |
| ASH             | shift arithmetically      | 072RSS         |
| ASHC            | arithmetic shift combined | 073RSS         |

The EIS instructions are directly compatible with the larger 11 computers.

The number formats are:



S is the sign bit.

S = 0 for positive quantities

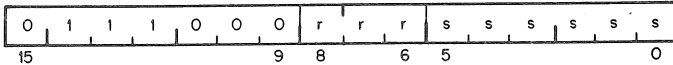
S = 1 for negative quantities; number is in 2's complement notation

Interrupts are serviced at the end of an EIS instruction.

# MUL

multiply

070RSS



**Operation:** R, Rv1  $\leftarrow$  R x(src)

**Condition Codes:** N: set if product is  $<0$ ; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if product is 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: cleared  
 C: set if the result is less than  $-2^{15}$  or greater than or equal to  $2^{15}-1$ .

**Description:** The contents of the destination register and source taken as two's complement integers are multiplied and stored in the destination register and the succeeding register (if R is even). If R is odd only the low order product is stored. Assembler syntax is : MUL S,R.  
 (Note that the actual destination is R, Rv1 which reduces to just R when R is odd.)

**Example:** 16-bit product (R is odd)

```
CLC                ;Clear carry condition code
MOV #400,R1
MUL #10,R1
BCS ERROR          ;Carry will be set if
                   ;product is less than
                   ; $-2^{15}$  or greater than or equal to  $2^{15}$ 
                   ;no significance lost
```

| Before        | After         |
|---------------|---------------|
| (R1) = 000400 | (R1) = 004000 |

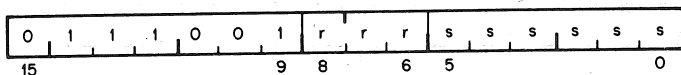
Assembler format for all EIS instructions is:  
 OPR src, R



# DIV

divide

071RSS



**Operation:** R, Rv1  $\leftarrow$  R, Rv1 / (src)

**Condition Codes:** N: set if quotient < 0; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if quotient = 0; cleared otherwise  
 V: set if source = 0 or if the absolute value of the register is larger than the absolute value of the source. (In this case the instruction is aborted because the quotient would exceed 15 bits.)  
 C: set if divide 0 attempted; cleared otherwise

**Description:** The 32-bit two's complement integer in R and Rv1 is divided by the source operand. The quotient is left in R; the remainder in Rv1. Division will be performed so that the remainder is of the same sign as the dividend. R must be even.

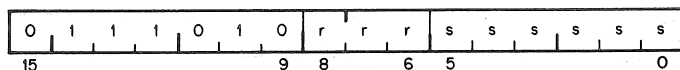
**Example:** CLR R0  
 MOV #20001,R1  
 DIV #2,R0

|               |               |           |
|---------------|---------------|-----------|
| Before        | After         |           |
| (R0) = 000000 | (R0) = 010000 | Quotient  |
| (R1) = 020001 | (R1) = 000001 | Remainder |

# ASH

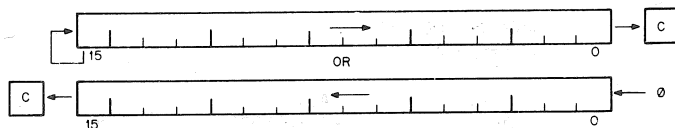
shift arithmetically

072RSS



- Operation:**  $R \leftarrow R$  Shifted arithmetically NN places to right or left  
Where NN = low order 6 bits of source
- Condition Codes:** N: set if result  $< 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
Z: set if result  $= 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
V: set if sign of register changed during shift; cleared otherwise  
C: loaded from last bit shifted out of register

**Description:** The contents of the register are shifted right or left the number of times specified by the shift count. The shift count is taken as the low order 6 bits of the source operand. This number ranges from  $-32$  to  $+31$ . Negative is a right shift and positive is a left shift.



## 6 LSB of source

011111  
000001  
111111  
100000

## Action in general register

Shift left 31 places  
shift left 1 place  
shift right 1 place  
shift right 32 places

## Example:

ASH R0, R3

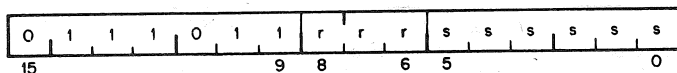
Before  
(R3)=001234  
(R0)=000003

After  
(R3)=012340  
(R0)=000003

# ASHC

arithmetic shift combined

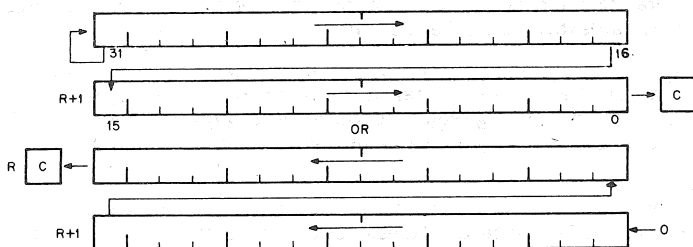
073RSS



**Operation:**  $R, Rv1 \leftarrow R, Rv1$  The double word is shifted NN places to the right or left, where NN = low order six bits of source

**Condition Codes:** N: set if result  $< 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
Z: set if result  $= 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
V: set if sign bit changes during the shift; cleared otherwise  
C: loaded with high order bit when left Shift; loaded with low order bit when right shift (loaded with the last bit shifted out of the 32-bit operand)

**Description:** The contents of the register and the register ORed with one are treated as one 32 bit word,  $R + 1$  (bits 0-15) and  $R$  (bits 16-31) are shifted right or left the number of times specified by the shift count. The shift count is taken as the low order 6 bits of the source operand. This number ranges from -32 to +31. Negative is a right shift and positive is a left shift. When the register chosen is an odd number the register and the register OR'ed with one are the same. In this case the right shift becomes a rotate (for up to a shift of 16). The 16 bit word is rotated right the number of bits specified by the shift count.

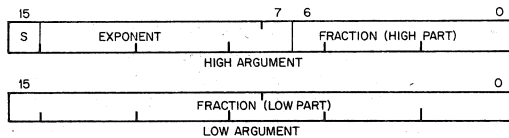


### 8.4.2 FLOATING POINT OPTION

The Floating Point instructions used with this option are unique to the PDP-11/35 & 40. However, the OP Codes used do not conflict with any other instructions.

| <u>Mnemonic</u> | <u>Instruction</u> | <u>Op Code</u> |
|-----------------|--------------------|----------------|
| FADD            | floating add       | 07500R         |
| FSUB            | floating subtract  | 07501R         |
| FMUL            | floating multiply  | 07502R         |
| FDIV            | floating divide    | 07503R         |

The number format is:



S = sign of fraction; 0 for positive, 1 for negative

Exponent = 8 bits for the exponent, in excess (200)<sub>10</sub> notation

Fraction = 23 bits plus 1 hidden bit (all numbers are assumed to be normalized)

The number format is essentially a sign and magnitude representation. The format is identical with the 11/45 for single precision numbers.

#### Fraction

The binary radix point is to the left (in front of bit 6 of the High Argument), so that the value of the fraction is always less than 1 in magnitude. Normalization would always cause the first bit after the radix point to be a 1, such that the fractional value would be between  $\frac{1}{2}$  and 1. Therefore, this bit can be understood and not be represented directly, to achieve an extra 1 bit of resolution.

The first bit to the right of the radix point (hidden bit) is always a 1. The next bit for the fraction is taken from bit 6 of the High Argument. The result of a Floating Point operation is always rounded away from zero, increasing the absolute value of the number.

#### Exponent

The 8-bit Exponent field (bits 14 to 7) allow exponent values between -128 and +127. Since an excess (200)<sub>10</sub> or (128)<sub>10</sub> number system is used, the correspondence between actual values and coded representation is as follows:

| <u>Actual Value</u> | <u>Representation</u> |               |
|---------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
|                     | <u>Octal</u>          | <u>Binary</u> |
| +127                | 377                   | 11 111 111    |
| +1                  | 201                   | 10 000 001    |
| 0                   | 200                   | 10 000 000    |
| -1                  | 177                   | 01 111 111    |
| -128                | 000                   | 00 000 000    |

### Example of a Number

$$= + (2^4)_{10} \times (.11)_2$$

$$[16 \times (\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4}) = 12]$$

## Registers

(R) = High B argument address  
(R)+2 = Low B argument address  
(R)+4 = High A argument address  
(R)+6 = Low A argument address

(R)+4 = address for High part of answer  
(R)+6 = address for Low part of answer

After execution of the instruction, the general register will point to the High answer, at  $(R)+4$ .

### Condition Codes

V = 1, if an error occurs  
N = 1, if underflow or divide-by-zero  
C = 1, if divide by zero  
Z = 0

8-11

Traps occur through the vector at location 244. A Floating Point instruction will be aborted if a BR request is issued before the instruction is near completion. The Program Counter will point to the aborted Floating instruction so that the Interrupt will look transparent.

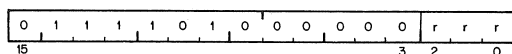
Assembler format is: OPR R

## INSTRUCTIONS

### FADD

floating add

07500R



**Operation:**  $[(R)+4, (R)+6] \leftarrow [(R)+4, (R)+6] + [(R), (R)+2]$ , if result  $\geq 2^{-128}$ ; else  $[(R)+4, (R)+6] \leftarrow [(R)+4, (R)+6]$

**Condition Codes:** N: set if result  $< 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result  $= 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
 V: cleared  
 C: cleared

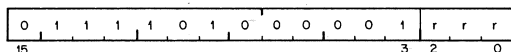
**Description:** Adds the A argument to the B argument and stores the result in the A Argument position on the stack. If result is less than  $2^{-128}$ , the destination address will contain the A argument. General register R is used as the stack pointer for the operation.

$A \leftarrow A + B$

### FSUB

floating subtract

07501R



**Operation:**  $[(R)+4, (R)+6] \leftarrow [(R)+4, (R)+6] - [(R), (R)+2]$ , if result  $\geq 2^{-128}$ ; else  $[(R)+4, (R)+6] \leftarrow [(R)+4, (R)+6]$

**Condition Codes:** N: set if result  $< 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
 Z: set if result  $= 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
 V: cleared  
 C: cleared

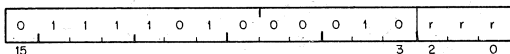
**Description:** Subtracts the B Argument from the A Argument and stores the result in the A Argument position on the stack. If result is less than  $2^{-128}$ , the destination address will contain the A Argument.

$A \leftarrow A - B$

# FMUL

floating multiply

07502R



**Operation:**  $[(R)+4, (R)+6] \leftarrow [(R)+4, (R)+6] \times [(R), (R)+2]$ , if result  $\geq 2^{-128}$ ; else  $[(R)+4, (R)+6] \leftarrow [(R)+4, (R)+6]$

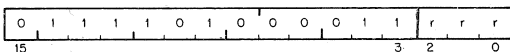
**Condition Codes:** N: set if result  $< 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
Z: set if result  $= 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
V: cleared  
C: cleared

**Description:** Multiplies the A Argument by the B Argument and stores the result in the A Argument position on the stack. If result is less than  $2^{-128}$ , the destination address will contain the A argument.  
 $A \leftarrow A \times B$

# FDIV

floating divide

07503R

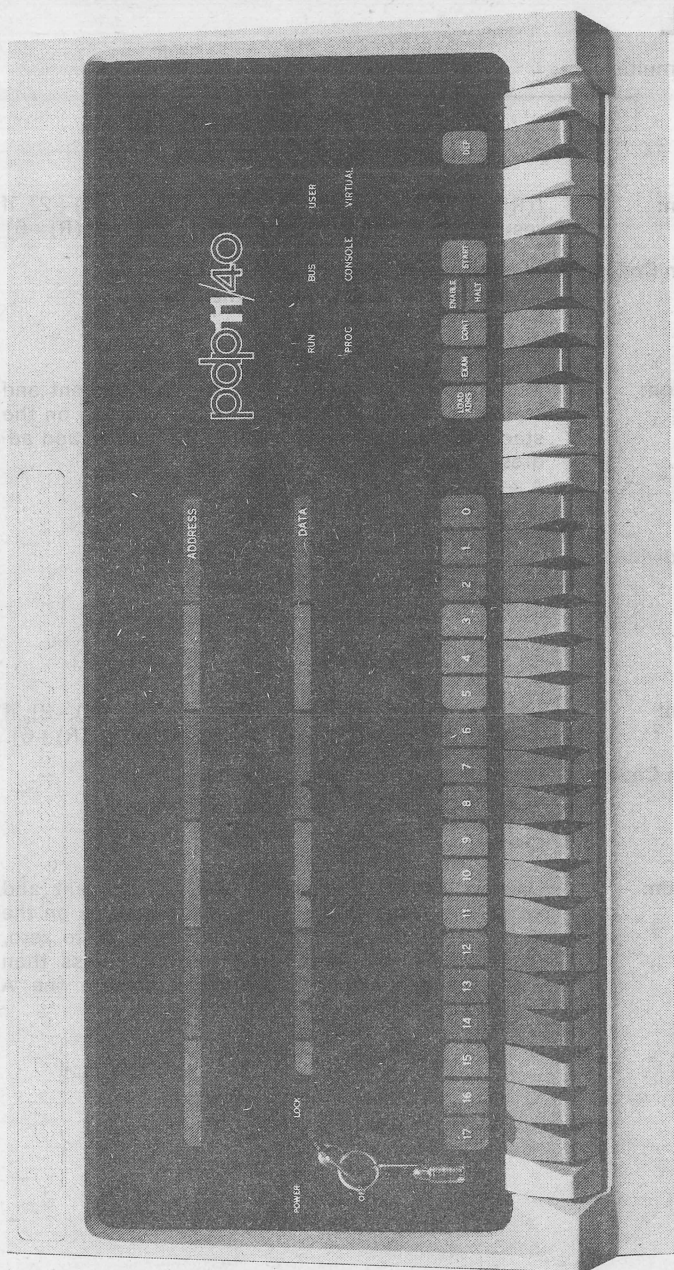


**Operation:**  $[(R)+4, (R)+6] \leftarrow [(R)+4, (R)+6] / [(R), (R)+2]$ , if result  $\geq 2^{-128}$ ; else  $[(R)+4, (R)+6] \leftarrow [(R)+4, (R)+6]$ .

**Condition Codes:** N: set if result  $< 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
Z: set if result  $= 0$ ; cleared otherwise  
V: cleared  
C: cleared

**Description:** Divides the A Argument by the B Argument and stores the result in the A Argument position on the stack. If the divisor (B Argument) is equal to zero, the stack is left untouched. If result is less than  $2^{-128}$ , the destination address will contain the A argument.

$$A \leftarrow A/B$$





## 8.5 PDP-11/35 & 11/40 CONSOLE OPERATION

### 8.5.1 Console Elements

The PDP-11/35 & 40 Operator's Console provides the following facilities:

Power Switch (with a key lock)

ADDRESS Register display (18 bits)

DATA Register display (16 bits)

Switch Register (18 switches)

Status Lights

RUN

PROCESSOR

BUS

CONSOLE

USER

VIRTUAL

Control Switches

LOAD ADRS (Load Address)

EXAM (Examine)

CONT (Continue)

ENABLE/HALT

START

DEP (Deposit)

### 8.5.2 Status Indicators

RUN

Lights when the processor clock is running. It is off when the processor is waiting for an asynchronous peripheral data response, or during a RESET instruction. It is on during a WAIT or HALT instruction.

PROCESSOR

Lights when the processor has control of the bus.

BUS

Lights when the UNIBUS is being used.

CONSOLE

Lights when in console mode (manual operation). Machine is stopped and is not executing the stored program.

USER

Lights when the CPU is executing program instructions in User mode.

VIRTUAL

Lights when the ADDRESS Register display shows the 16-bit Virtual Address.

### 8.5.3 Console Switches

|                                            |   |      |                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------|---|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| POWER                                      | { | OFF  | Power to the processor is off.                                                                                |
|                                            |   | ON   | Power to the processor is on and all console switches function normally.                                      |
|                                            |   | LOCK | Power to the processor is on, but the Control Switches are disabled. The Switch Register is still functional. |
| Switch Register<br>( Up = 1)<br>(Down = 0) |   |      | Used to manually load data or an address into the processor.                                                  |

#### Control Switches

|                                    |        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| LOAD ADRS<br>(depress to activate) |        | Transfers contents of the Switch Register to the Bus Address register.<br><br>The resulting Bus Address is displayed in the ADDRESS Register, and provides an address for EXAM, DEP, and START. The LOAD Address is not modified during program execution. To restart a program at the previous Start Location, the START switch is activated.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| EXAM<br>(depress to activate)      |        | Causes the contents of the location specified by the Bus Address to be displayed in the DATA Register. If the EXAM switch is depressed again, the contents of the next sequential word location are displayed. (Bus Address is incremented automatically). If an odd address is specified, the next lower even address word will be displayed. If a non-existent memory address is specified, no UNIBUS operation will be completed, and contents of the Switch Register address (777 570) will be displayed in the DATA register. |
| CONT<br>(depress to activate)      |        | Causes the processor to continue operation from the point at which it had stopped. The switch has no effect when the CPU is in the RUN state. If the program had stopped, this switch provides a restart without a System Reset.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| ENABLE/HALT                        | {      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                    | ENABLE | Allows the CPU to perform normal operations under program control.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                    | HALT   | Causes the CPU to stop. Depressing the CONT switch will now cause execution of a single instruction.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

**START**  
(depress to activate)

If the CPU is in the RUN state, the START switch causes only system reset.

If the program had stopped, depressing the START switch causes a System Reset signal to occur; the program will then continue only if the ENABLE/HALT switch is in ENABLE.

**DEP**  
(raise to activate)

Deposits contents of the Switch Register into the location specified by the Bus Address. If the DEP switch is raised again, the Switch Register contents (which were probably modified) are located into the next word location. (Bus Address is incremented automatically). If an odd address is specified, the next lower even address word will be used. If a non-existent memory address is specified, no UNIBUS operation will be completed, and contents of the Switch Register address (777 570) will be displayed in the DATA register.

#### **8.5.4 Displays**

**ADDRESS Register**

Displays the address of data just examined or deposited. During a programmed HALT or WAIT instruction, the display shows the next instruction address.

**DATA Register**

Displays data just examined or deposited. During HALT, general register R0 contents are displayed. During Single Instruction operation, the Processor Status word (PS) is displayed.

If the CPU is in the RUN state, the START switch causes only a system reset.

If the program had stopped, depressing the START switch causes a System Reset signal to occur; the program will then continue only if the ENABLE/HAULT switch is in ENABLE.

Deposits contents of the Switch Register into the location specified by the Bus Address. If the DEP switch is raised again, the Switch Register contents (which were probably modified) are loaded into the

START (depress to activate)

DEP (raise to activate)



## CHAPTER 9

# MEMORY MANAGEMENT (FOR THE 11/30 & 11/40)

### 9.1 GENERAL

#### 9.1.1 Options

This chapter describes the Memory Management option, which mounts in the 11/35 or 11/40 Central Processor assembly unit. The option provides the hardware facilities necessary for complete memory management and protection. It is designed to be a memory management facility for systems where the memory size is greater than 28K words and for multi-user, multi-programming systems where protection and relocation facilities are necessary.

The Stack Limit option, which is included with the Memory Management option, is described at the end of the chapter. The Stack Limit option allows dynamic adjustment of the lower limit of permissible stack addresses.

The options are contained on individual modules that plug into dedicated prewired slots.

KT11-D Memory Management option

KJ11-A Stack Limit option

#### 9.1.2 Programming

The Memory Management hardware has been optimized towards a multi-programming environment and the processor can operate in two modes, Kernel and User. When in Kernel mode, the program has complete control and can execute all instructions. Monitors and supervisory programs would be written in this mode.

When in User Code, the program is prevented from executing certain instructions that could:

- a) cause the modification of the Kernel program.
- b) halt the computer.
- c) use memory space assigned to the Kernel program.

In a multi-programming environment several user programs would be resident in memory at any given time. The task of the supervisory program would be: control the execution of the various user programs, manage the allocation of memory and peripheral device resources, and safeguard the integrity of the system as a whole by careful control of each user program.

In a multi-programming system, the Management Unit provides the means for assigning pages (relocatable memory segments) to a user program and preventing that user from making any unauthorized access to those pages outside his assigned area. Thus, a user can effectively be prevented from accidental or willful destruction of any other user program or the system executive program.

Hardware implemented features enable the operating system to dynamically allocate memory upon demand, while a program is being run. These features are particularly useful when running higher-level language programs, where, for example, arrays are constructed at execution time. No fixed space is reserved for them by the compiler. Lacking dynamic memory allocation capability, the program would have to calculate and allow sufficient memory space to accommodate the worst case. Memory Management eliminates this time-consuming and wasteful procedure.

### **9.1.3 Basic Addressing**

The addresses generated by all PDP-11 Family Central Processor Units (CPUs) are 18-bit direct byte addresses. Although the PDP-11 Family word length and operational logic is all 16-bit length, the UNIBUS and CPU addressing logic actually is 18-bit length. Thus, while the PDP-11 word can only contain address references up to 32K words (64K bytes) the CPU and UNIBUS can reference addresses up to 128K words (256K bytes). These extra two bits of addressing logic provide the basic framework for expanding memory references.

In addition to the word length constraint on basic memory addressing space, the uppermost 4K words of address space is always reserved for UNIBUS I/O device registers. In a basic PDP-11 memory configuration (without Management) all address references to the uppermost 4K words of 16-bit address space (160000-177777) are converted to full 18-bit references with bits 17 and 16 always set to 1. Thus, a 16-bit reference to the I/O device register at address 173224 is automatically internally converted to a full 18-bit reference to the register at address 773224. Accordingly, the basic PDP-11 configuration can directly address up to 28K words of true memory, and 4K words of UNIBUS I/O device registers.

### **9.1.4 Active Page Registers**

The Memory Management Unit uses two sets of eight 32-bit Active Page Registers. An APR is actually a pair of 16-bit registers: a Page Address Register (PAR) and a Page Descriptor Register (PDR). These registers are always used as a pair and contain all the information needed to describe and locate the currently active memory pages.

One set of APR's is used in Kernel mode, and the other in User mode. The choice of which set to be used is determined by the current CPU mode contained in the Processor Status word.

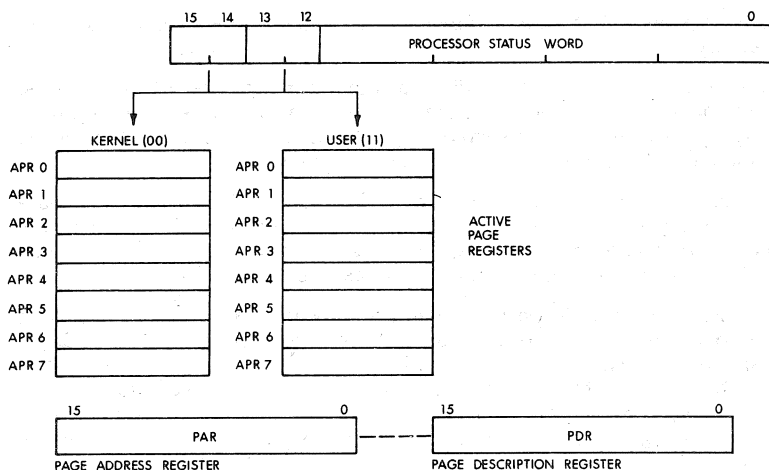


Figure 9-1 Active Page Registers

### 9.1.5 Capabilities Provided by Memory Management

Memory Size (words): 124K, max (plus 4K for I/O & registers)

Address Space: Virtual (16 bits)  
Physical (18 bits)

Modes of Operation: Kernel & User

Stack Pointers: 2 (one for each mode)

Memory Relocation:  
Number of Pages: 16 (8 for each mode)  
Page Length: 32 to 4,096 words

Memory Protection: no access  
read only  
read/write

## 9.2 RELOCATION

### 9.2.1 Virtual Addressing

When the Memory Management Unit is operating, the normal 16-bit direct byte address is no longer interpreted as a direct Physical Address (PA) but as a Virtual Address (VA) containing information to be used in constructing a new 18-bit physical address. The information contained in the Virtual Address (VA) is combined with relocation and description information contained in the Active Page Register (APR) to yield an 18-bit Physical Address (PA).

Because addresses are automatically relocated, the computer may be considered to be operating in virtual address space. This means that no matter where a program is loaded into physical memory, it will not have

to be "re-linked"; it always appears to be at the same virtual location in memory.

The virtual address space is divided into eight separate 4K-word pages. Each page is relocated separately. This is a useful feature in multi-programmed timesharing systems. It permits a new large program to be loaded into discontinuous blocks of physical memory.

A page may be as small as 32 words, so that short procedures or data areas need occupy only as much memory as required. This is a useful feature in real-time control systems that contain many separate small tasks. It is also a useful feature for stack and buffer control.

A basic function is to perform memory relocation and provide extended memory addressing capability for systems with more than 28K of physical memory. Two sets of page address registers are used to relocate virtual addresses to physical addresses in memory. These sets are used as hardware relocation registers that permit several user's programs, each starting at virtual address 0, to reside simultaneously in physical memory.

### 9.2.2 Program Relocation

The page address registers are used to determine the starting address of each relocated program in physical memory. Figure 9-2 shows a simplified example of the relocation concept.

Program A starting address 0 is relocated by a constant to provide physical address 6400<sub>8</sub>.

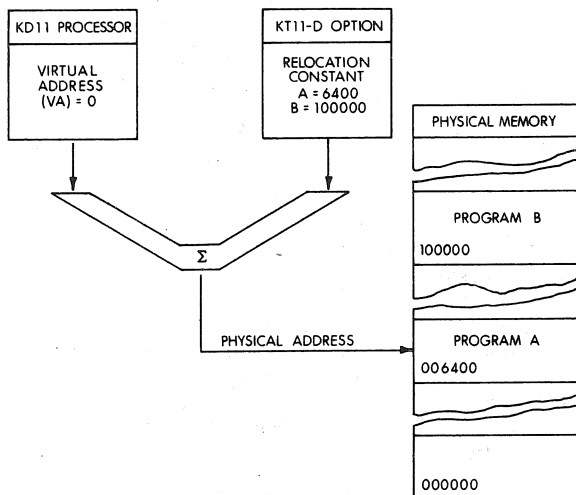


Figure 9-2 Simplified Memory Relocation Example



If the next processor virtual address is 2, the relocation constant will then cause physical address 6402<sub>8</sub>, which is the second item of Program A, to be accessed. When Program B is running, the relocation constant is changed to 100000<sub>8</sub>. Then, Program B virtual addresses starting at 0, are relocated to access physical addresses starting at 100000<sub>8</sub>. Using the active page address registers to provide relocation eliminates the need to "re-link" a program each time it is loaded into a different physical memory location. The program always appears to start at the same address.

A program is relocated in pages consisting of from 1 to 128 blocks. Each block is 32 words in length. Thus, the maximum length of a page is 4096 (128 x 32) words. Using all of the eight available active page registers in a set, a maximum program length of 32,768 words can be accommodated. Each of the eight pages can be relocated anywhere in the physical memory, as long as each relocated page begins on a boundary that is a multiple of 32 words. However, for pages that are smaller than 4K words, only the memory actually allocated to the page may be accessed.

The relocation example shown in Figure 9-3 illustrates several points about memory relocation.

- a) Although the program appears to be in contiguous address space to the processor, the 32K-word virtual address space is actually scattered through several separate areas of physical memory. As long as the total available physical memory space is adequate, a program can be loaded. The physical memory space need not be contiguous.
- b) Pages may be relocated to higher or lower physical addresses, with respect to their virtual address ranges. In the example Figure 6-3, page 1 is relocated to a higher range of physical addresses, page 4 is relocated to a lower range, and page 3 is not relocated at all (even though its relocation constant is non-zero).
- c) All of the pages shown in the example start on 32-word boundaries.
- d) Each page is relocated independently. There is no reason why two or more pages could not be relocated to the same physical memory space. Using more than one page address register in the set to access the same space would be one way of providing different memory access rights to the same data, depending upon which part of a program was referencing that data.

### Memory Units

|                             |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Block:                      | 32 words                            |
| Page:                       | 1 to 128 blocks (32 to 4,096 words) |
| No. of pages:               | 8 per mode                          |
| Size of relocatable memory: | 27,768 words, max (8 x 4,096)       |

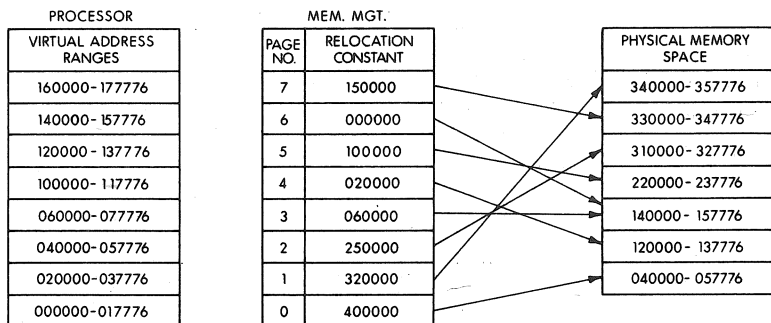


Figure 9-3 Relocation of a 32K Word Program into 124K Word Physical Memory

### 9.3 PROTECTION

A timesharing system performs multiprogramming; it allows several programs to reside in memory simultaneously, and to operate sequentially. Access to these programs, and the memory space they occupy, must be strictly defined and controlled. Several types of memory protection must be afforded a timesharing system. For example:

- User programs must not be allowed to expand beyond allocated space, unless authorized by the system.
- User must be prevented from modifying common subroutines and algorithms that are resident for all users.
- Users must be prevented from gaining control of or modifying the operating system software.

The Memory Management option provides the hardware facilities to implement all of the above types of memory protection.

#### 9.3.1 Inaccessible Memory

Each page has a 2-bit access control key associated with it. The key is assigned under program control. When the key is set to 0, the page is defined as non-resident. Any attempt by a user program to access a non-resident page is prevented by an immediate abort. Using this feature to provide memory protection, only those pages associated with the current program are set to legal access keys. The access control keys of all other program pages are set to 0, which prevents illegal memory references.

#### 9.3.2 Read-Only Memory

The access control key for a page can be set to 2, which allows read (fetch) memory references to the page, but immediately aborts any attempt to write into that page. This read-only type of memory protection

can be afforded to pages that contain common data, subroutines, or shared algorithms. This type of memory protection allows the access rights to a given information module to be user-dependent. That is, the access right to a given information module may be varied for different users by altering the access control key.

A page address register in each of the sets (Kernel and User modes) may be set up to reference the same physical page in memory and each may be keyed for different access rights. For example, the User access control key might be 2 (read-only access), and the Kernel access control key might be 6 (allowing complete read/write access).

### 9.3.3 Multiple Address Space

There are two complete separate PAR/PDR sets provided: one set for Kernel mode and one set for User mode. This affords the timesharing system with another type of memory protection capability. The mode of operation is specified by the Processor Status Word current mode field, or previous mode field, as determined by the current instruction.

Assuming the current mode PS bits are valid, the active page register sets are enabled as follows:

| PS(bits15, 14) | PAR/PDR Set Enabled                        |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 00             | Kernel mode                                |
| 01             | Illegal (all references aborted on access) |
| 10             |                                            |
| 11             |                                            |
|                | User mode                                  |

Thus, a User mode program is relocated by its own PAR/PDR set, as are Kernel programs. This makes it impossible for a program running in one mode to accidentally reference space allocated to another mode when the active page registers are set correctly. For example, a user cannot transfer to Kernel space. The Kernel mode address space may be reserved for resident system monitor functions, such as the basic Input/Output Control routines, memory management trap handlers, and timesharing scheduling modules. By dividing the types of timesharing system programs functionally between the Kernel and User modes, a minimum amount of space control housekeeping is required as the timeshared operating system sequences from one user program to the next. For example, only the User PAR/PDR set needs to be undated as each new user program is serviced. The two PAR/PDR sets implemented in the Memory Management Unit option are shown in Figure 9-1.

## 9.4 ACTIVE PAGE REGISTERS

The Memory Management Unit provides two sets of eight Active Page Registers (APR). Each APR consists of a Page Address Register (PAR) and a Page Descriptor Register (PDR). These registers are always used as a pair and contain all the information required to locate and describe the current active pages for each mode of operation. One PAR/PDR set is used in Kernel mode and the other is used in User mode. The current mode bits (or in some cases, the previous mode bits) of the Processor Status Word determine which set will be referenced for each memory access. A program operating in one mode cannot use the PAR/PDR sets of the other mode to access memory. Thus, the two sets are

a key feature in providing a fully protected environment for a time-shared multi-programming system.

A specific processor I/O address is assigned to each PAR and PDR of each set. Table 9-1 is a complete list of address assignment.

#### NOTE

UNIBUS devices cannot access PARs or PDRs

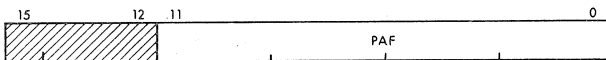
In a fully-protected multi-programming environment, the implication is that only a program operating in the Kernel mode would be allowed to write into the PAR and PDR locations for the purpose of mapping user's programs. However, there are no restraints imposed by the logic that will prevent User mode programs from writing into these registers. The option of implementing such a feature in the operating system, and thus explicitly protecting these locations from user's programs, is available to the system software designer.

**Table 9-1 PAR/PDR Address Assignments**

| Kernel Active Page Registers |        |        | User Active Page Registers |        |        |
|------------------------------|--------|--------|----------------------------|--------|--------|
| No.                          | PAR    | PDR    | No.                        | PAR    | PDR    |
| 0                            | 772340 | 772300 | 0                          | 777640 | 777600 |
| 1                            | 772342 | 772302 | 1                          | 777642 | 777602 |
| 2                            | 772344 | 772304 | 2                          | 777644 | 777604 |
| 3                            | 772346 | 772306 | 3                          | 777646 | 777606 |
| 4                            | 772350 | 772310 | 4                          | 777650 | 777610 |
| 5                            | 772352 | 772312 | 5                          | 777652 | 777612 |
| 6                            | 772354 | 772314 | 6                          | 777654 | 777614 |
| 7                            | 772356 | 772316 | 7                          | 777656 | 777616 |

#### 6.4.1 Page Address Registers (PAR)

The Page Address Register (PAR), shown in Figure 9-4, contains the 12-bit Page Address Field (PAF) that specifies the base address of the page.



**Figure 9-4 Page Address Register**

Bits 15-12 are unused and reserved for possible future use.

The Page Address Register may be alternatively thought of as a relocation constant, or as a base register containing a base address. Either interpretation indicates the basic function of the Page Address Register (PAR) in the relocation scheme.

#### 9.4.2 Page Descriptor Registers (PDR)

The Page Descriptor Register (PDR), shown in Figure 9-5, contains information relative to page expansion, page length, and access control.

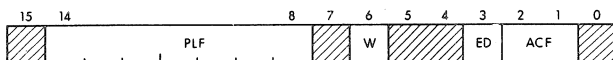


Figure 9-5 Page Descriptor Register

### Access Control Field (ACF)

This 2-bit field, bits 2 and 1, of the PDR describes the access rights to this particular page. The access codes or "keys" specify the manner in which a page may be accessed and whether or not a given access should result in an abort of the current operation. A memory reference that causes an abort is not completed and is terminated immediately.

Aborts are caused by attempts to access non-resident pages, page length errors, or access violations, such as attempting to write into a read-only page. Traps are used as an aid in gathering memory management information.

In the context of access control, the term "write" is used to indicate the action of any instruction which modifies the contents of any addressable word. A "write" is synonymous with what is usually called a "store" or "modify" in many computer systems. Table 9-2 lists the ACF keys and their functions. The ACF is written into the PDR under program control.

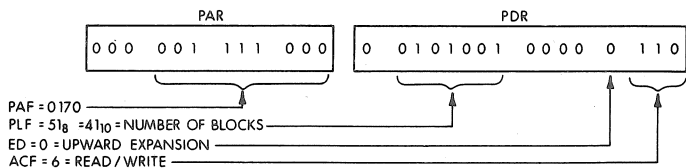
Table 9-2 Access Control Field Keys

| AFC | Key | Description          | Function                                           |
|-----|-----|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 00  | 0   | Non-resident         | Abort any attempt to access this non-resident page |
| 01  | 2   | Resident read-only   | Abort any attempt to write into this page.         |
| 10  | 4   | (unused)             | Abort all Accesses.                                |
| 11  | 6   | Resident read/ write | Read or Write allowed. No trap or abort occurs.    |

### Expansion Direction (ED)

The ED bit located in PDR bit position 3 indicates the authorized direction in which the page can expand. A logic 0 in this bit ( $ED = 0$ ) indicates the page can expand upward from relative zero. A logic 1 in this bit ( $ED = 1$ ) indicates the page can expand downward toward relative zero. The ED bit is written into the PDR under program control. When the expansion direction is upward ( $ED = 0$ ), the page length is increased by adding blocks with higher relative addresses. Upward expansion is usually specified for program or data pages to add more program or table space. An example of page expansion upward is shown in Figure 9-6.

When the expansion direction is downward ( $ED = 1$ ), the page length is increased by adding blocks with lower relative addresses. Downward expansion is specified for stack pages so that more stack space can be added. An example of page expansion downward is shown in Figure 9-7.



#### NOTE:

To specify a block length of 42 for an upward expandable page, write highest authorized block no. directly into high byte of PDR. Bit 15 is not used because the highest allowable block number is  $177_8$ .

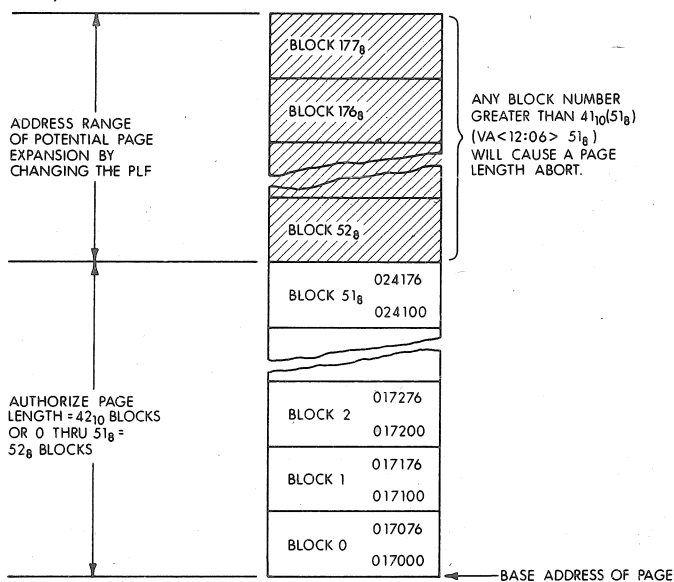


Figure 9-6 Example of an Upward Expandable Page

### **Written Into (W)**

The W bit located in PDR bit position 6 indicates whether the page has been written into since it was loaded into memory.  $W = 1$  is affirmative. The W bit is automatically cleared when the PAR or PDR of that page is written into. It can only be set by the control logic.

In disk swapping and memory overlay applications, the W bit (bit 6) can be used to determine which pages in memory have been modified by a user. Those that have been written into must be saved in their current form. Those that have not been written into ( $W = 0$ ), need not be saved and can be overlayed with new pages, if necessary.

### **Page Length Field (PLF)**

The 7-bit PLF located in PDR (bits 14-8) specifies the authorized length of the page, in 32-word blocks. The PLF holds block numbers from 0 to 177<sub>8</sub>; thus allowing any page length from 1 to 128<sub>10</sub> blocks. The PLF is written in the PDR under program control.

### **PLF for an Upward Expandable Page**

When the page expands upward, the PLF must be set to one less than the intended number of blocks authorized for that page. For example, if 52<sub>8</sub> (42<sub>10</sub>) blocks are authorized, the PLF is set to 51<sub>8</sub> (41<sub>10</sub>) (Figure 9-6). The KT11-D hardware compares the virtual address block number, VA (bits 12-6) with the PLF to determine if the virtual address is within the authorized page length.

When the virtual address block number is less than or equal to the PLF, the virtual address is within the authorized page length. If the virtual address is greater than the PLF, a page length fault (address too high) is detected by the hardware and an abort occurs. In this case, the virtual address space legal to the program is non-contiguous because the three most significant bits of the virtual address are used to select the PAR/PDR set.

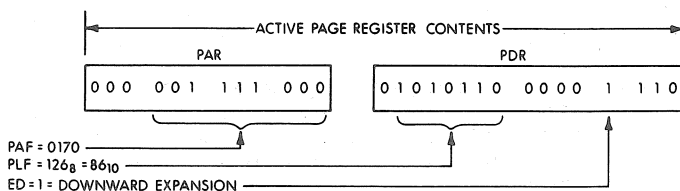
### **PLF for a Downward Expandable Page**

The capability of providing downward expansion for a page is intended specifically for those pages that are to be used as stacks. In the PDP-11, a stack starts at the highest location reserved for it and expands downward toward the lowest address as items are added to the stack.

When the page is to be downward expandable, the PLF must be set to authorize a page length, in blocks, that starts at the highest address of the page. That is always Block 177<sub>8</sub>. Refer to Figure 9-7, which shows an example of a downward expandable page. A page length of 42<sub>10</sub> blocks is arbitrarily chosen so that the example can be compared with the upward expandable example shown in Figure 9-6.

### **NOTE**

The same PAF is used in both examples. This is done to emphasize that the PAF, as the base address, always determines the lowest address of the page, whether it is upward or downward expandable.



To specify page length for a downward expandable page, write complement of blocks required into high byte of PDR.

In this example, a 42-block page is required.  
PLF is derived as follows:

$42_{10} = 52_8$ ; two's complement =  $126_8$ .

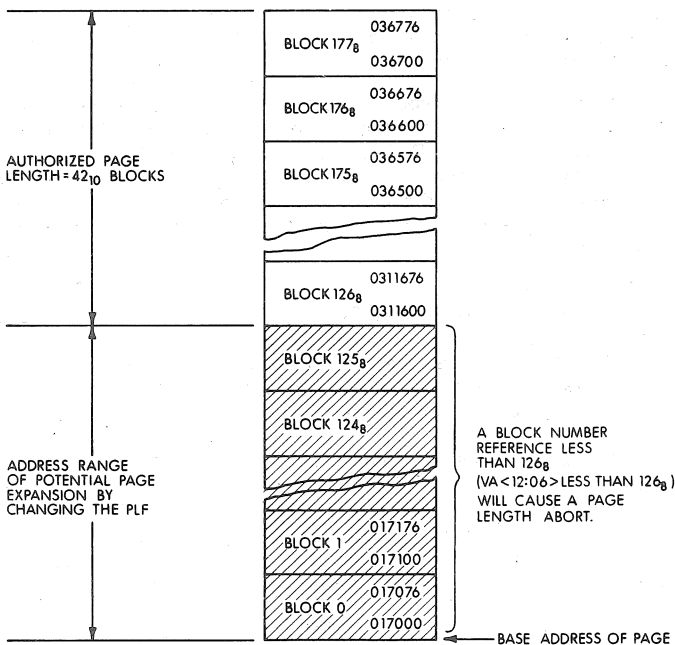


Figure 9-7 Example of a Downward Expandable Page



The calculations for complementing the number of blocks required to obtain the PLF is as follows:

| MAXIMUM BLOCK NO. | MINUS | REQUIRED LENGTH  | EQUALS | PLF              |
|-------------------|-------|------------------|--------|------------------|
| 177 <sub>8</sub>  | —     | 52 <sub>8</sub>  | =      | 125 <sub>8</sub> |
| 127 <sub>10</sub> | —     | 42 <sub>10</sub> | =      | 85 <sub>10</sub> |

## 9.5 VIRTUAL & PHYSICAL ADDRESSES

The Memory Management Unit is located between the Central Processor Unit and the UNIBUS address lines. Once installed, the Processor ceases to supply address information to the Unibus. Instead, addresses are sent to the Memory Management Unit where they are either transferred without change or relocated by various constants computed within the Memory Management Unit.

### 9.5.1 Construction of a Physical Address

The basic information needed for the construction of a Physical Address (PA) comes from the Virtual Address (VA), which is illustrated in Figure 6-8, and the appropriate APR set.

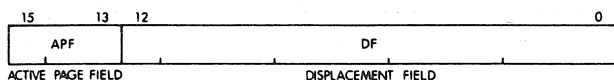


Figure 9-8 Interpretation of a Virtual Address

The Virtual Address (VA) consists of:

1. The Active Page Field (APF). This 3-bit field determines which of eight Active Page Registers (APR0-APR7) will be used to form the Physical Address (PA).
2. The Displacement Field (DF). This 13-bit field contains an address relative to the beginning of a page. This permits page lengths up to 4K words ( $2^{13} = 8K$  bytes). The DF is further subdivided into two fields as shown in Figure 9-9.

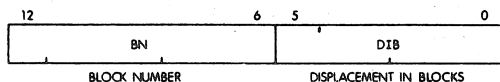


Figure 9-9. Displacement Field of Virtual Address

The Displacement Field (DF) consists of:

1. The Block Number (BN). This 7-bit field is interpreted as the block number within the current page.
2. The Displacement in Block (DIB). This 6-bit field contains the displacement within the block referred to by the Block Number.

The remainder of the information needed to construct the Physical Address comes from the 12-bit Page Address Field (PAF) (part of the Active Page Register) and specifies the starting address of the memory which that APR describes. The PAF is actually a block number in the physical memory, e.g. PAF = 3 indicates a starting address of 96, ( $3 \times 32 = 96$ ) words in physical memory.

The formation of a physical address takes 150 ns.

The formation of the Physical Address is illustrated in Figure 9-10.

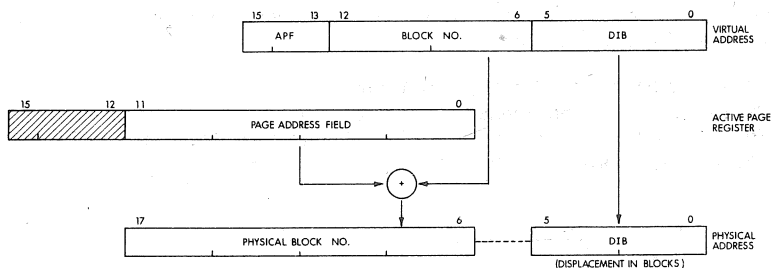


Figure 9-10 Construction of a Physical Address

The logical sequence involved in constructing a Physical Address is as follows:

1. Select a set of Active Page Registers depending on current mode.
2. The Active Page Field of the Virtual Address is used to select an Active Page Register (APRO-APR7).
3. The Page Address Field of the selected Active Page Register contains the starting address of the currently active page as a block number in physical memory.
4. The Block Number from the Virtual Address is added to the block number from the Page Address Field to yield the number of the block in physical memory which will contain the Physical Address being constructed.
5. The Displacement in Block from the Displacement Field of the Virtual Address is joined to the Physical Block Number to yield a true 18-bit Physical Address.

### 9.5.2 Determining the Program Physical Address

A 16-bit virtual address can specify up to 32K words, in the range from 0 to  $177776_8$  (word boundaries are even octal numbers). The three most significant virtual address bits designate the PAR/PDR set to be referenced during page address relocation. Table 9-3 lists the virtual address ranges that specify each of the PAR/PDR sets.

**Table 9-3 Relating Virtual Address to PAR/PDR Set**

| Virtual Address Range | PAR/PDR Set |
|-----------------------|-------------|
| 000000-17776          | 0           |
| 020000-37776          | 1           |
| 040000-57776          | 2           |
| 060000-77776          | 3           |
| 100000-117776         | 4           |
| 120000-137776         | 5           |
| 140000-157776         | 6           |
| 160000-177776         | 7           |

**NOTE**

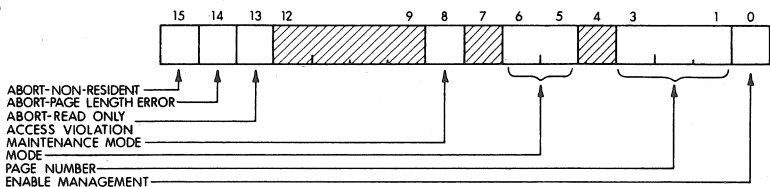
Any use of page lengths less than 4K words causes holes to be left in the virtual address space.

**9.6 STATUS REGISTERS**

Aborts generated by the hardware are vectored through Kernel virtual location 250. Status Registers #0 and #2 (#1 is used by the PDP-11/45) are used to determine why the abort occurred. Note that an abort to a location which is itself an invalid address will cause another abort. Thus the Kernel program must insure that Kernel Virtual Address 10 is mapped into a valid address, otherwise a loop will occur which will require console intervention.

**9.6.1 Status Register 0 (SR0)**

SR0 contains abort error flags, memory management enable, plus other essential information required by an operating system to recover from an abort or service a memory management trap. The SR0 format is shown in Figure 9-11. Its address is 777 572.



**Figure 9-11 Format of Status Register #0 (SR0)**

Bits 15-13 are the abort flags. They may be considered to be in a "priority queue" in that "flags to the right" are less significant and should be ignored. For example, a "non-resident" abort service routine would ignore page length and access control flags. A "page length" abort service routine would ignore an access control fault.

**NOTE**

Bit 15, 14, or 13, when set (abort conditions) cause the logic to freeze the contents of SR0 bits 1 to 6 and status register SR2. This is done to facilitate recovery from the abort.

Bits 15-13 are enabled when an address is being relocated. This implies that either SRO, bit 0 is equal to 1 (KT11-D operating) or that SRO, bit 8, is equal to 1 and the memory reference is the final one of a destination calculation (maintenance/destination mode).

Note that SRO bits 0 and 8 can be set under program control to provide meaningful memory management control information. However, information written into all other bits is not meaningful. Only that information which is automatically written into these remaining bits as a result of hardware actions is useful as a monitor of the status of the memory management unit. Setting bits 15-13 under program control will not cause traps to occur. These bits, however, must be reset to 0 after an abort or trap has occurred in order to resume monitoring memory management.

#### **Abort-Nonresident**

Bit 15 is the "Abort-Nonresident" bit. It is set by attempting to access a page with an access control field (ACF) key equal to 0 or 4 and setting PS (bits 15, 14) to an illegal mode.

#### **Abort—Page Length**

Bit 14 is the "Abort-Page Length" bit. It is set by attempting to access a location in a page with a block number (virtual address bits 12-6) that is outside the area authorized by the Page Length Field (PFL) of the PDR for that page.

#### **Abort-Read Only**

Bit 13 is the "Abort-Read Only" bit. It is set by attempting to write in a "Read-Only" page having an access key of 2.

#### **NOTE**

There are no restrictions that any abort bits could not be set simultaneously by the same access attempt.

#### **Maintenance/Destination Mode**

Bit 8 specifies maintenance use of the Memory Management Unit. It is used for diagnostic purposes. For the instructions used in the initial diagnostic program, bit 8 is set so that only the final destination reference is relocated. It is useful to prove the capability of relocating addresses.

#### **Mode of Operation**

Bits 5 and 6 indicate the CPU mode (User or Kernel) associated with the page causing the abort. (Kernel = 00, User = 11). These bits are controlled by the logic that decodes current and previous mode bits of the PS.

#### **Page Number**

Bits 3-1 contain the page number of reference. Pages, like blocks, are numbered from 0 upwards. The page number bit is used by the error recovery routine to identify the page being accessed if an abort occurs.

#### **Enable KT11-D**

Bit 0 is the "Enable KT11-D" bit. When it is set to 1, all addresses are

relocated and protected by the memory management unit. When bit 0 is set to 0, the memory management unit is disabled and addresses are neither relocated nor protected.

### 9.6.2 Status Register 2 (SR2)

SR2 is loaded with the 16-bit Virtual Address (VA) at the beginning of each instruction fetch but is not updated if the instruction fetch fails. SR2 is read only; a write attempt will not modify its contents. SR2 is the Virtual Address Program Counter. Upon an abort, the result of SR0 bits 15, 14, or 13 being set, will freeze SR2 until the SR0 abort flags are cleared. The address of SR2 is 777 576.

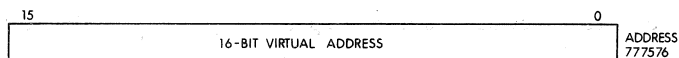


Figure 9-12 Format of Status Register 2(SR2)

## 9.7 INSTRUCTIONS

Memory Management provides the ability to communicate between two spaces, as determined by the current and previous modes of the Processor Status word (PS).

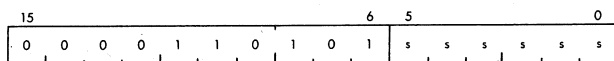
| Mnemonic | Instruction                          | Op Code |
|----------|--------------------------------------|---------|
| MFPI     | move from previous instruction space | 0065SS  |
| MTPI     | move to previous instruction space   | 0066DD  |

These instructions are directly compatible with the larger 11 computers.

# MFPI

move from previous instruction space

0065SS



**Operation:** (temp) ← (src)  
↓ (SP) ← (temp)

**Condition Codes:** N: set if the source  $\leq 0$ ; otherwise cleared  
Z: set if the source  $= 0$ ; otherwise cleared  
V: cleared  
C: unaffected

**Description:** This instruction pushes a word onto the current stack from an address in previous space, Processor Status (bits 13, 12). The source address is computed using the current registers and memory map.

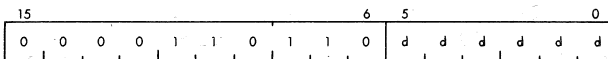
**Example:** MFPI @ (R2)  $R2 = 1000$   
 $1000 = 37526$

The execution of this instruction causes the contents of (relative) 37526 of the previous address space to be pushed onto the current stack as determined by the PS (bits 15, 14).

# MTP1

move to previous instruction space

0066DD



**Operation:** (temp)  $\leftarrow$  (SP)  $\uparrow$   
(dst)  $\leftarrow$  (temp)

**Condition Codes:** N: set if the source  $<0$ ; otherwise cleared  
Z: set if the source  $=0$ ; otherwise cleared  
V: cleared  
C: unaffected

**Description:** This instruction pops a word off the current stack determined by PS (bits 15, 14) and stores that word into an address in previous space PS (bits 13, 12). The destination address is computed using the current registers and memory map. An example is as follows:

**Example:** MTPI @ (R2)  $R2 = 1000$   
 $1000 = 37526$

The execution of this instruction causes the top word of the current stack to get stored into the (relative) 37526 of the previous address space.

MTPI AND MFPI, MODE 0, REGISTER 6 ARE UNIQUE IN THAT THESE INSTRUCTIONS ENABLE COMMUNICATIONS TO AND FROM THE PREVIOUS USER STACK.

; MFPI, MODE 0, NOT REGISTER 6

```

MOV  #KM+PUM, PSW      ; KMODE, PREV USER
MOV  #-1, -2(6)         ; MOVE -1 on kernel stack -2
CLR  %0
INC  @#SR0              ; ENABLE KT
MFPI %0                 ; -(KSP)←R0 CONTENTS

```

The -1 in the kernel stack is now replaced by the contents of R0 which is 0.

; MFPI, MODE 0, REGISTER 6

```

MOV  #UM+PUM, PSW
CLR  %6                 ; SET R16=0
MOV  #KM+PUM, PSW      ; K MODE, PREV USER
MOV  #-1, -2(6)
INC  @#SR0              ; ENABLE KT
MFPI %6                 ; -(KSP)←R16 CONTENTS

```

The -1 in the kernel stack is now replaced by the contents of R16 (user stack pointer which is 0).

To obtain info from the user stack if the status is set to kernel mode, prev user, two steps are needed.

```

MFPI %6                 ; get contents of R16=user pointer
MFPI @(6)+              ; get user pointer from kernel stack
                          ; use address obtained to get data
                          ; from user mode using the prev
                          ; mode

```

The desired data from the user stack is now in the kernel stack and has replaced the user stack address.



; MTPI, MODE 0 , NOT REGISTER 6

```

MOV    #KM+PUM, PSW      ; KERNEL MODE, PREV USES
MOV    #TAGX, (6)        ; PUT NEW PC ON STACK
INC    @#SR0              ; ENABLE KT
MTPI   %7                 ; %7 ← (6)+
HLT                                         ; ERROR
TA6X: CLR @#SR0           ; DISABLE KT

```

The new PC is popped off the current stack and since this is mode 0 and not register 6 the destination is register 7.

; MTPI, MODE 0, REGISTER 6

```

MOV    #UM+PUM, PSW      ; user mode, Prev User
CLR    %6                 ; set user SP=0 (R16)
MOV    #KM+PUM, PSW      ; Kernel mode, prev user
MOV    #-1, -(6)          ; MOVE -1 into K stack (R6)
INC    @#SR0              ; Enable KT
MTPI   %6                 ; %16 ←(6)+

```

The 0 in R16 is now replaced with -1 from the contents of the kernel stack.

To place info on the user stack if the status is set to kernel mode, prev user mode, 3 separate steps are needed.

```

MFPI   %6                 ; Get content of R16=user pointer
MOV    #DATA, -(6)        ; put data on current stack
MTPI   @(6)+              ; @(6)+ [final address relocated] ←
                           ; (R6)+

```

The data desired is obtained from the kernel stack then the destination address is obtained from the kernel stack and relocated through the previous mode.

### Mode Description

In Kernel mode the operating program has unrestricted use of the machine. The program can map users' programs anywhere in core and thus explicitly protect key areas (including the device registers and the Processor Status word) from the User operating environment.

In User mode a program is inhibited from executing a HALT instruction and the processor will trap through location 10 if an attempt is made to execute this instruction. A RESET instruction results in execution of a NOP (no-operation) instruction.

There are two stacks called the Kernel Stack and the User Stack, used by the central processor when operating in either the Kernel or User mode, respectively.

Stack Limit violations are disabled in User mode. Stack protection is provided by memory protect features.

### Interrupt Conditions

The Memory Management Unit relocates all addresses. Thus, when Management is enabled, all trap, abort, and interrupt vectors are considered to be in Kernel mode Virtual Address Space. When a vectored transfer occurs, control is transferred according to a new Program Counter (PC) and Processor Status Word (PS) contained in a two-word vector relocated through the Kernel Active Page Register Set.

When a trap, abort, or interrupt occurs the "push" of the old PC, old PS is to the User/Kernel R6 stack specified by CPU mode bits 15, 14 of the new PS in the vector (00 = Kernel, 11 = User). The CPU mode bits also determine the new APR set. In this manner it is possible for a Kernel mode program to have complete control over service assignments for all interrupt conditions, since the interrupt vector is located in Kernel space. The Kernel program may assign the service of some of these conditions to a User mode program by simply setting the CPU mode bits of the new PS in the vector to return control to the appropriate mode.

User Processor Status (PS) operates as follows:

| PS Bits           | User RTI, RTT     | User Traps, Interrupts  | Explicit PS Access |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| Cond. Codes (3-0) | loaded from stack | loaded from vector      | *                  |
| Trap (4)          | loaded from stack | loaded from vector      | cannot be changed  |
| Priority (7-5)    | cannot be changed | loaded from vector      | *                  |
| Previous (13-12)  | cannot be changed | copied from PS (15, 14) | *                  |
| Current (15-14)   | cannot be changed | loaded from vector      | *                  |

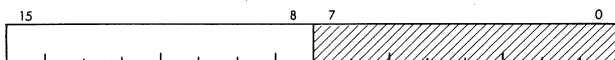
\* Explicit operations can be made if the Processor Status is mapped in User space.

## 9.8 STACK LIMIT OPTION

This option allows program control of the lower limit for permissible stack addresses. This limit may be varied in increments of  $(400)_8$  bytes or  $(200)_8$  words, up to a maximum address of 177 400 (almost the top of a 32K memory).

The normal boundary for stack addresses is 400. The Stack Limit option allows this lower limit to be raised, providing more address space for interrupt vectors or other data that should not be destroyed by the program.

There is a Stack Limit Register, with the following format:



The Stack Limit Register can be addressed as a word at location 777774, or as a byte at location 777775. The register is accessible to the processor and console, but not to any bus device.

The 8 bits, 15 through 8, contain the stack limit information. These bits are cleared by System Reset, Console Start, or the RESET instruction. The lower 8 bits are not used. Bit 8 corresponds to a value of  $(400)_8$  or  $(256)_{10}$ .

### Stack Limit Violations

When instructions cause a stack address to exceed (go slower than) a limit set by the programmable Stack Limit Register, a Stack Violation occurs. There is a Yellow Zone (grace area) of 16 words below the Stack Limit which provides a warning to the program so that corrective steps can be taken. Operations that cause a Yellow Zone Violation are completed, then a bus error trap is effected. The error trap, which itself uses the stack, executes without causing an additional violation, unless the stack has entered the Red Zone.

A Red Zone Violation is a Fatal Stack Error. (Odd stack or non-existent stack are the other Fatal Stack Errors.) When detected, the operation causing the error is aborted, the stack is repositioned to address 4, and a bus error occurs. The old PC and PS are pushed into location 0 and 2, and the new PC and PS are taken from locations 4 and 6.

### Stack Limit Addresses

The contents of the Stack Limit Register (SL) are compared to the stack address to determine if a violation has occurred. The least significant bit of the register (bit 8) has a value of  $(400)_8$ . The determination of the violation zones is as follows:

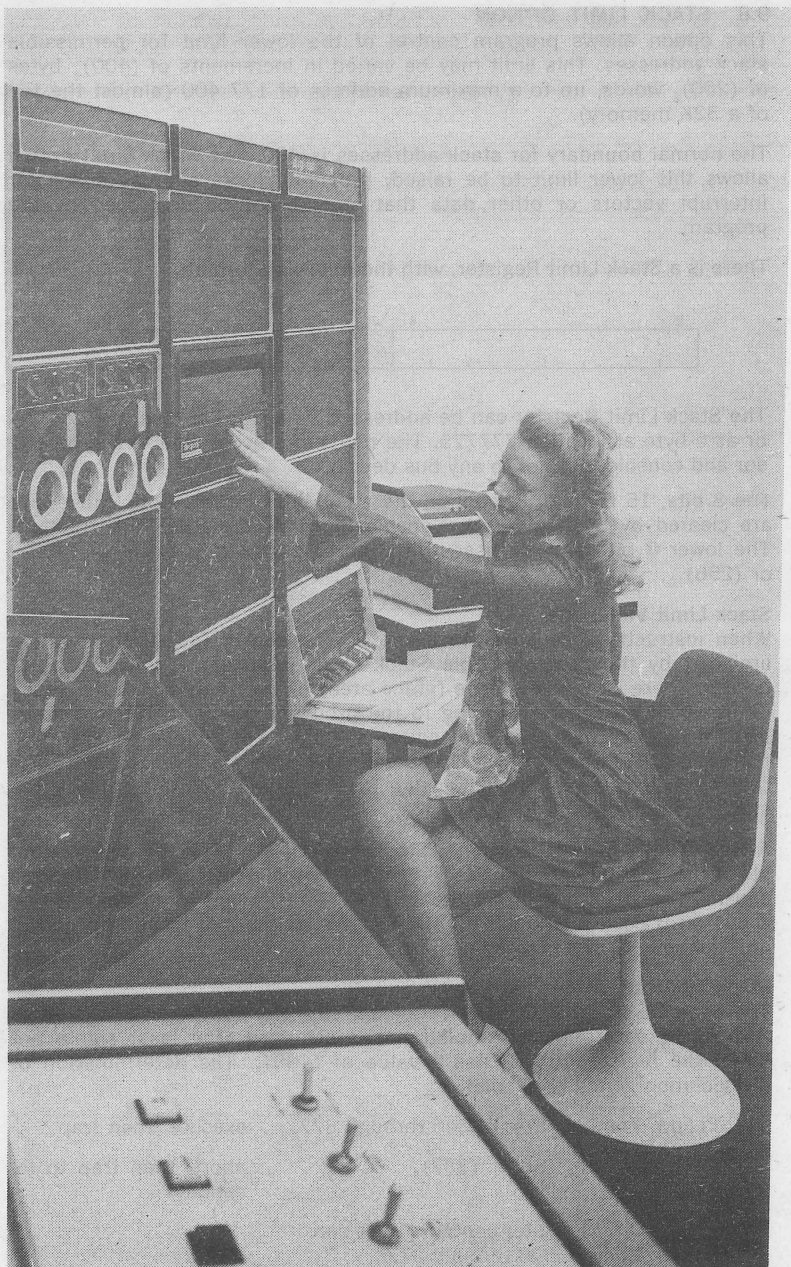
Yellow Zone =  $(SL) + (340 \text{ through } 377)_8$       execute, then trap

Red Zone  $\leq (SL) + (337)_8$       abort, then trap to location 4

If the Stack Limit Register contents were zero:

Yellow Zone = 340 through 377

Red Zone = 000 through 337



## PDP-11/45

**10.1 DESCRIPTION**

The PDP-11/45 is a medium scale general purpose computer designed around the basic architecture of all PDP-11 family machines.

The Central Processing Unit has a cycle time of 300 nsec and performs all arithmetic and logical operations required in the system. A Floating Point Processor (described in Chapter 12) mounts integrally into the Central Processor as does a Memory Management Unit which provides a full memory management facility through relocation and protection (described in Chapter 11). See Figure 10-1.

The PDP-11/45 hardware has been optimized towards a multi-programming environment and the processor therefore operates in three modes (Kernel, Supervisor, and User) and has two sets of General Registers.

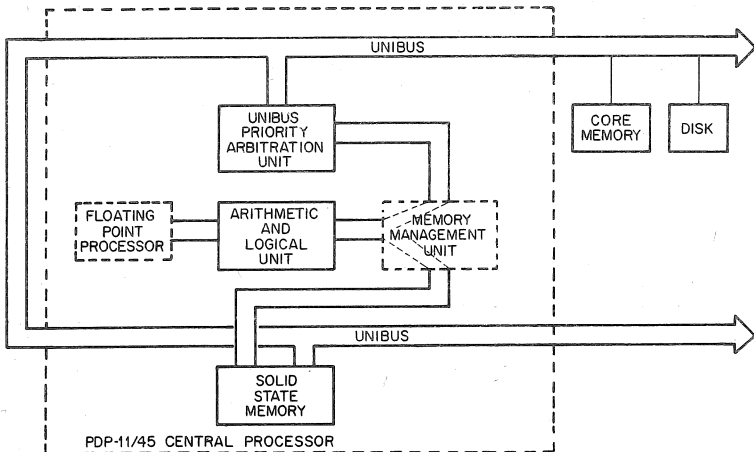


Figure 10-1 PDP-11/45 System Block Diagram

The central processor performs all arithmetic and logical operations required in the system. It also acts as the arbitration unit for UNIBUS control by regulating bus requests and transferring control of the bus to the requesting device with the highest priority.

The central processor contains arithmetic and control logic for a wide range of operations. These include high-speed fixed point arithmetic with hardware multiply and divide, extensive test and branch operations, and other control operations. It also provides room for the addition of the high-speed Floating Point Processor, and Memory Management Unit.

The machine operates in three modes: Kernel, Supervisor, and User. When the machine is in Kernel mode a program has complete control of the machine; when the machine is in any other mode the processor is inhibited from executing certain instructions and can be denied direct access to the peripherals on the system. This hardware feature can be used to provide complete executive protection in a multi-programming environment.

The central processor contains 16 general registers which can be used as accumulators, index registers, or as stack pointers. Stacks are extremely useful for nesting programs, creating re-entrant coding, and as temporary storage where a Last-In First-Out structure is desirable. A special instruction "MARK" is provided to further facilitate re-entrant programming. One of the general registers is used as the PDP-11/45's program counter. Three others are used as Processor Stack Pointers, one for each operational mode.

The CPU is directly connected to the high-speed memories as well as to the general purpose registers and the UNIBUS and UNIBUS Priority Arbitration Unit.

Figure 10-2 illustrates the data paths in the CPU.

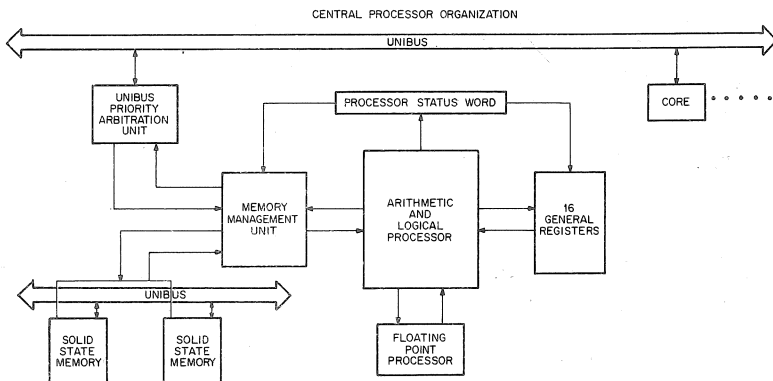


Figure 10-2 Central Processor Data Paths

The CPU performs all of the computer's computation and logic operations in a parallel binary mode through step by step execution of individual instructions. The instructions are stored in either core or solid state memory.

### General Registers

The general registers (see Figure 10-3) can be used for a variety of purposes; the uses varying with requirements.

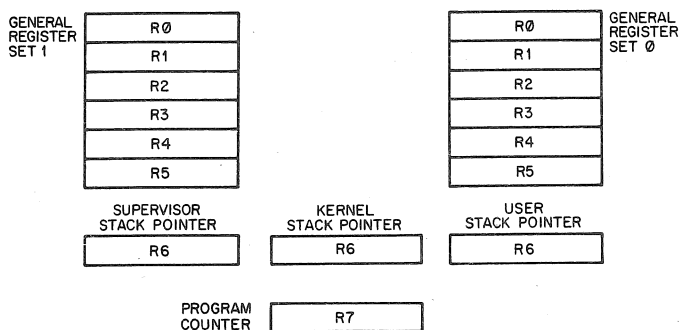


Figure 10-3 The General Registers

R7 is used as the machine's program counter (PC) and contains the address of the next instruction to be executed. It is a general register normally used only for addressing purposes and not as an accumulator for arithmetic operations.

The R6 register is normally used as the Processor Stack Pointer indicating the last entry in the appropriate stack (a common temporary storage area with "Last-In First-Out" characteristics). (For information on the programming uses of stacks, please refer to Chapter 5.) The three stacks are called the Kernel Stack, the Supervisor Stack, and the User Stack. When the Central Processor is operating in Kernel mode it uses the Kernel Stack, in Supervisor mode, the Supervisor Stack, and in User mode, the User Stack. When an interrupt or trap occurs, the PDP-11/45 automatically saves its current status on the Processor Stack selected by the service routine. This stack-based architecture facilitates reentrant programming.

The remaining 12 registers are divided into two sets of unrestricted registers, R0-R5. The current register set in operation is determined by the Processor Status Word.

The two sets of registers can be used to increase the speed of real-time data handling or facilitate multi-programming. The six registers in General Register Set 0 could each be used as an accumulator and/or index register for a real-time task or device, or as general registers for a Kernel or Supervisor mode program. General Register Set 1 could be used by the remaining programs or User mode programs. The Supervisor can therefore protect its general registers and stack from User programs, or other parts of the Supervisor.

## Processor Status Word

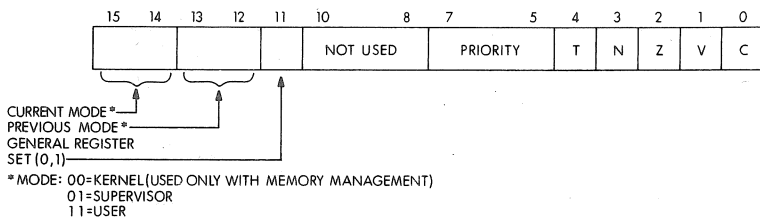


Figure 10-4 Processor Status Word

The Processor Status Word, located at location 777776, contains information on the current status of the PDP-11/45. See Figure 10-4. This information includes the register set currently in use; current processor priority; current and previous operational modes; the condition codes describing the results of the last instruction; and an indicator for detecting the execution of an instruction to be trapped during program debugging.

## Modes

Mode information includes the present mode, either User, Supervisor, or Kernel (bits 15, 14); the mode the machine was in prior to the last interrupt or trap (bits 13, 12); and which register set (General Register Set 0 or 1) is currently being used (bit 11).

The three modes permit a fully protected environment for a multi-programming system by providing the user with three distinct sets of Processor Stacks and Memory Management Registers for memory mapping. In all modes except Kernel a program is inhibited from executing a "HALT" instruction and the processor will trap through location 4 if an attempt is made to execute this instruction. Furthermore, the processor will ignore the "RESET" and "SPL" instructions. In Kernel mode, the processor will execute all instructions.

A program operating in Kernel mode can map users' programs anywhere in core and thus explicitly protect key areas (including the devices registers and the Processor Status Word) from the User operating environment.



### **Processor Priority**

The Central Processor operates at any of eight levels of priority, 0-7. When the CPU is operating at level 7 an external device cannot interrupt it with a request for service. The Central Processor might be operating at a lower priority than the priority of the external device's request in order for the interruption to take effect. The current priority is maintained in the processor status word (bits 5-7). The 8 processor levels provide an effective interrupt mask, which can be dynamically altered through use of the Set Priority Level (SPL) instruction which is described in Chapter 4 and which can only be used by the Kernel. This instruction allows a Kernel mode program to alter the Central Processor's priority without affecting the rest of the Processor Status Word.

### **Stack Limit Register**

All PDP-11's have a Stack Overflow Boundary at location 400. The Kernel Stack Boundary, in the PDP-11/45 is a variable boundary set through the Stack Limit Register found in location 777775.

Once the Kernel stack exceeds its boundary, the Processor will complete the current instruction and then trap to location 4 (Yellow or Warning Stack Violation). If, for some reason, the program persists beyond the 16-word limit, the processor will abort the offending instruction, set the stack pointer (R6) to 4 and trap to location 4 (Red or Fatal Stack Violation). A description of these traps is contained in Appendix A.

### **Floating Point Processor**

The PDP-11/45 Floating Point Processor fits integrally into the Central Processor. It provides a supplemental instruction set for performing single and double precision floating point arithmetic operations and floating-integer conversions in parallel with the CPU. It is described in Chapter 12.

## **10.2 MEMORY**

Memory is the primary storage medium for instructions and data. Three types are available for the PDP-11/45:

#### **SOLID STATE:**

Bipolar Memory with a cycle time of 300 nsec.

MOS Memory with a cycle time of 495 nsec.

#### **CORE:**

Magnetic Core Memory with a cycle time of 980 ns, access at 360 ns (450 ns at the UNIBUS).

Any system can be expanded from the basic 8K or 16K words to 124K words in increments of 8K words. The system can be configured with various mixtures of the three types of memory, with a maximum limit of 32K words of Solid State Memory.

### Solid State Memory

The Central Processor communicates directly with the MOS and Bipolar memories through a very high speed data path which is internal to the PDP-11/45 processor system. The CPU can control up to two independent Solid State Memory controllers, each of which can have from one to four 4K word increments of MOS memory (16K words) per controller, or one 4K word increment of Bipolar memory per controller. Each controller can handle MOS or Bipolar memory but not a mixture of the two. The user can therefore have a total of 32K of MOS, or 8K of Bipolar, or 16K of MOS and 4K of Bipolar.

Each controller has dual ports and provides one interface to the CPU and another to a second UNIBUS. See Figure 10-5.

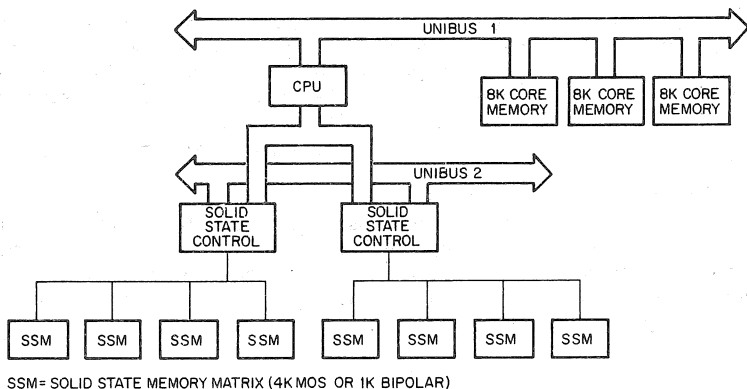


Figure 10-5 Memory Configuration

There are two UNIBUSes on the PDP-11/45 but in a single processor environment the second UNIBUS is generally connected into the first and becomes part of it. The existence of a second UNIBUS becomes significant where a high speed device would like to directly access the solid state memory. A device using the second UNIBUS must include a UNIBUS Priority Arbitration Unit, and the bus thus lends itself to multi-processor environments. See Figure 10-6.

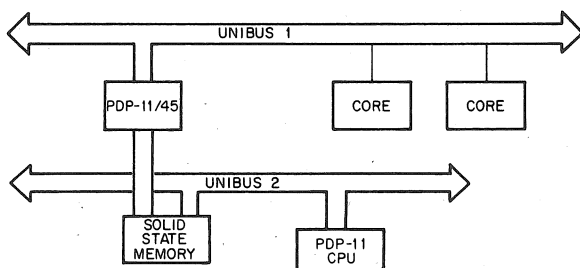


Figure 10-6 Multiprocessor Use of the Second UNIBUS

The UNIBUS and data path to the Solid State Memory are independent. While the Central Processor is operating on data in one Solid State Memory controller through the direct data path, any device could be using the UNIBUS to transfer information to core, to another device, or to the other Solid State Memory Controller. This autonomy significantly increases the throughput of the system.

### Memory Retention

MOS memory bits have a capacitance which is charged to denote a 1 and uncharged to denote a 0. The entire MOS memory must be refreshed periodically, or the data will be lost. On the PDP-11/45, 1/32nd of the memory is refreshed every 60 microseconds. This process consumes only one solid state memory cycle.

The power required to refresh MOS memory is significantly less than that required for operation of the memory. Bipolar memory, on the other hand, does not require a refresh cycle but does require the same power to retain information as to operate.

### Core Memory

The Central Processor communicates with core memory through the UNIBUS.

Each memory bank operates independently from other banks through its own controller which interfaces directly to the UNIBUS. Core memory can be continuously attached to the UNIBUS until the system contains a total of 124K (126,976 words) of memory.

An external device may use the UNIBUS to read or write core memory completely independent of, and simultaneously with the Central Processor's access of solid state memory. Furthermore, core memory and solid state memory may be used by the processor interchangeably.

### 10.3 PROCESSOR TRAPS

There are a series of errors and programming conditions which will cause the Central Processor to trap to a set of fixed locations. These include Power Failure, Odd Addressing Errors, Stack Errors, Timeout Errors, Memory Parity Errors, Memory Management Violations, Floating Point Processor Exception Traps, Use of Reserved Instructions, Use of the T bit in the Processor Status Word, and use of the IOT, EMT, and TRAP instructions.

Stack Errors, Memory Parity Errors, and the T bit Trap have already been discussed in this chapter. Memory Management Violations and Floating Point Exception Traps are described in Chapters 6 and 7 respectively. The IOT, EMT, and TRAP instructions are described in Chapter 4.

#### Power Failure

Whenever AC power drops below 95 volts for 110v power (190 volts for 220v) or outside a limit of 47 to 63 Hz, as measured by DC power, the power fail sequence is initiated. The Central Processor automatically traps to location 24 and the power fail program has 2 msec. to save all volatile information (data in registers), and to condition peripherals for power fail.

When power is restored the processor traps to location 24 and executes the power up routine to restore the machine to its state prior to power failure.

#### Odd Addressing Errors

This error occurs whenever a program attempts to execute a word instruction on an odd address (in the middle of a word boundary). The instruction is aborted and the CPU traps through location 4.

#### Time-out Errors

These errors occur when a Master Synchronization pulse is placed on the UNIBUS and there is no slave pulse within 5 to 10  $\mu$ sec. This error usually occurs in attempts to address non-existent memory or peripherals.

The offending instruction is aborted and the processor traps through location 4.

#### Reserved Instructions

There is a set of illegal and reserved instructions which cause the processor to trap through Location 10. The set is fully described in Appendix C.

#### Trap Handling

Appendix A includes a list of the reserved Trap Vector locations, and System Error Definitions which cause processor traps. When a trap occurs, the processor follows the same procedure for traps as it does for interrupts (saving the PC and PS on the new Processor Stack etc....).

In cases where traps and interrupts occur concurrently, the processor will service the conditions according to the priority sequence shown in Table 10-1.

Console Flag

Odd Addressing Error

Fatal Stack Violations (Red)

Memory Management Violations

Timeout Errors

Parity Errors

Floating Point Processor Transfer Request

Memory Management Traps

Warning Stack Violation (Yellow)

Power Failure

Processor Priority level 7

Floating Point Exception Trap

PIR 7

BR 7

.

.

.

.

PIR 1

Processor 0

Table 10-1 Processor Service Hierarchy

## 10.4 MULTIPROGRAMMING

The PDP-11/45's architecture with its three modes of operation, its two sets of general registers, its Memory Management capability and its Program Interrupt Request facility provides an ideal environment for multi-programming systems.

In any multi-programming system there must be some method of transferring information and control between programs operating in the same or different modes. The PDP-11/45 provides the user with these communication paths.

### Control Information

Control is passed inwards (User, Supervisor, Kernel) by all traps and interrupts. All trap and interrupt vectors are located in Kernel virtual space. Thus all traps and interrupts pass through Kernel space to pick up their new PC and PS and determine the new mode of processing.

Control is passed outwards (Kernel, Supervisor, User) by the RTI and RTT instructions (described in Chapter 4).

### Data

Data is transferred between modes by four instructions: Move From Previous Instruction space (MFPI), Move From Previous Data Space (MFPD), Move To Previous Instruction space (MTPI) and Move To Previous Data space (MTPD). There are four instructions rather than two as Memory Management distinguishes between instructions and data. The instructions are fully described in Chapter 4. However, it should be noted that these instructions have been designed to allow data transfers to be under the control of the innermost mode (Kernel, Supervisor, User) program and not the outermost, thus providing protection of an inner program from an outer.

### Processor Status Word

The PDP 11/45 protects the PS from implicit references by Supervisor and User programs which could result in damage to an inner level program.

A program operating in Kernel mode can perform any manipulation of the PS. Programs operating at outer levels (Supervisor and User) are inhibited from changing bits 5-7 (the Processor's Priority). They are also restricted in their treatment of bits 15, 14 (Current Mode), bits 13, 12 (Previous Mode), and bit 11 Register Set); these bits may only be set, they are only cleared by an interrupt or trap.

Thus, a programmer can pass control outwards through the RTI and RTT instructions to set bits in the mode fields of his PS. To move inwards, however, bits must be cleared and he must, therefore, issue a trap or interrupt.

The Kernel can further protect the PS from explicit references (Move data to location 777776—the PS) through Memory Management.

## 10.5 SPECIFICATIONS

|                                       |                                                                |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Computer</b>                       | PDP-11/45                                                      |
| <b>Main Market</b>                    | OEM & End User                                                 |
| <b>Memory</b>                         |                                                                |
| Min size:                             | 16K                                                            |
| Max size:                             | 124K                                                           |
| Type:                                 | bipolar, MOS, core                                             |
| Parity:                               | optional                                                       |
| <b>Central Processor</b>              |                                                                |
| Instructions:                         | basic set + XOR, SOB, MARK, SXT, RTT, MUL, DIV, ASH, ASHC, SPL |
| Programming modes:                    | 3                                                              |
| No. of general registers:             | 16                                                             |
| Auto hardware interrupts:             | yes                                                            |
| Auto software interrupts:             | yes                                                            |
| Power fail/auto restart:              | yes                                                            |
| <b>Mechanical &amp; Environmental</b> |                                                                |
| Front panel height:                   | 31"                                                            |
| Input power:                          | 230 VAC $\pm 10\%$ , 47 to 63 Hz                               |
| Operating temperature:                | 10°C to 50°C                                                   |
| Relative humidity:                    | 20% to 95%, non-condensing                                     |
| <b>Equipment</b>                      |                                                                |
| I/O serial interface:                 | standard                                                       |
| Console terminal:                     | standard                                                       |
| Line frequency clock:                 | optional                                                       |
| Hardware bootstrap:                   | optional                                                       |
| Programmer's console:                 | standard                                                       |
| Extended arithmetic:                  | standard                                                       |
| Floating point:                       | optional                                                       |
| Stack limit address:                  | optional                                                       |
| Memory management:                    | optional                                                       |
| Cabinet:                              | standard                                                       |

### Additional Instructions

The PDP-11/45 implements the following instructions:

|      |                           |
|------|---------------------------|
| MUL  | multiply                  |
| DIV  | divide                    |
| ASH  | shift arithmetically      |
| ASHC | arithmetic shift combined |

These instructions, which are standard with the PDP-11/45 but optional with the PDP-11/35 and 11/40, are described in chapter 8, pages 8-6 to 8-9.

### Notes

1. CPU Fastbus activity does not degrade data transfer speed of either bus, except when both buses are simultaneously accessing the same MS11 control board.
2. If there are two MS11 controls in a CPU, transfers on one bus to one control do not interact with transfers on the other bus to the other control.
3. UNIBUS transfers to core memory do not interact with Fastbus transfers to an MS11 control, i.e., the UNIBUS can have NPR transfers at a rate greater than one million words per second to interleaved core memory while simultaneously the CPU can be executing programs out of solid state memory at a data transfer rate of either:
  - a) 2 million words per second for MOS memory
  - b) 3 million words per second for bipolar memory.Thus the maximum 11/45 system data transfer speed is:
  - a) 3 million words per second for MOS memory or:
  - b) 4 million words per second for bipolar memory.
4. The two MS11 solid state memory controls are connected to a single Unibus (Unibus-B) that can be easily separated from the 11/45 CPU Unibus (Unibus-A) by removing a simple jumper module, thus facilitating dual unibus systems. Unibus B does not have its own Unibus arbitration control logic, thus a second CPU is required for other than NPR transfers from a single device.



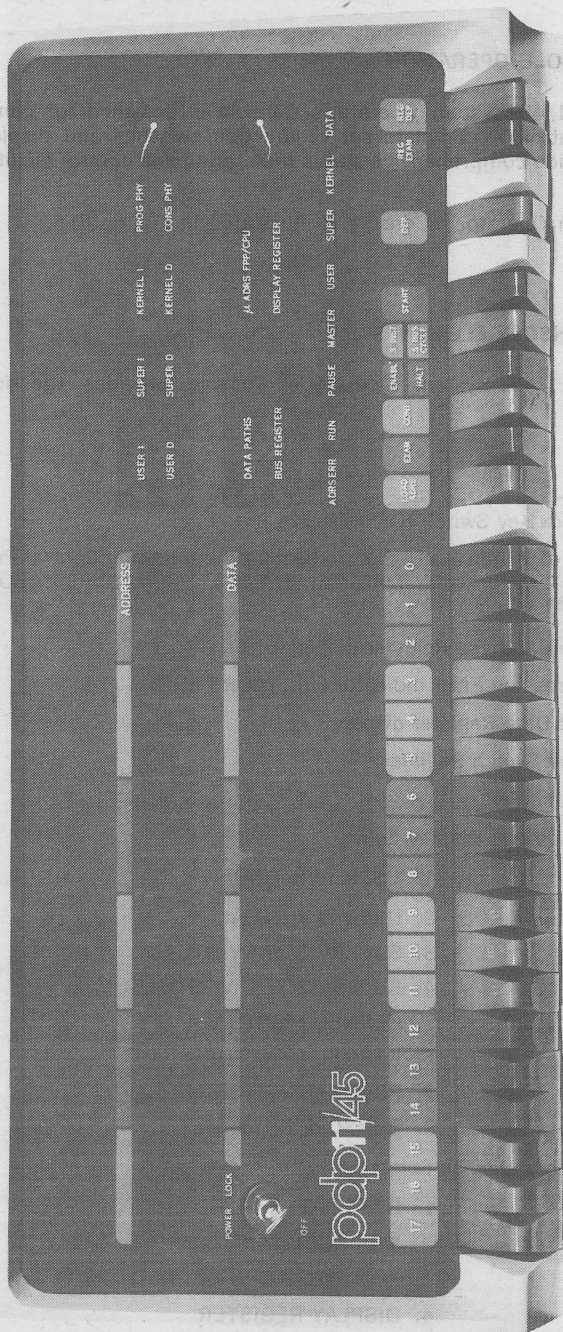


Figure 10-5 System Operator's Console

## 10.6 CONSOLE OPERATION

The PDP-11/45 System Operator's Console is designed for convenient system control. A complete set of function switches and display indicators provide comprehensive status monitoring and control facilities.

The System Operator's Console is illustrated in Figure 10-5.

### 10.6.1 CONSOLE ELEMENTS

The PDP-11/45 System Operator's Console provides the following facilities:

- 1) A System Key Switch (OFF/ON/LOCK)
- 2) A bank of 7 indicator lights, indicating the following Central Processor states: RUN, PAUSE, MASTER(UNIBUS), USER, SUPERVISOR, KERNEL, DATA.
- 3) An 18-bit Address Register display
- 4) An Addressing Error indicator light (ADRS ERR)
- 5) A 16-bit Data Register display
- 6) An 18-bit Switch Register
- 7) Control knobs
  - a) Address Display Select
    1. USER I VIRTUAL
    2. USER D VIRTUAL
    3. SUPERVISOR I VIRTUAL
    4. SUPERVISOR D VIRTUAL
    5. KERNEL I VIRTUAL
    6. KERNEL D VIRTUAL
    7. PROGRAM PHYSICAL
    8. CONSOLE PHYSICAL
  - b) Data Display Select
    1. DATA PATHS
    2. BUS REGISTER
    3. FPP  $\mu$ ADRS.CPU  $\mu$ ADRS.
    4. DISPLAY REGISTER

## 8) Control Switches

- a) LOAD ADRS (Load Address)
- b) EXAM (Examine)
- c) CONT (Continue)
- d) ENABLE/HALT
- e) S-INST/S-BUS CYCLE (Single Instruction/Single Bus Cycle)
- f) START
- g) DEPOSIT
- h) REG EXAM (Register Examine)
- i) REG DEPOSIT (Register Deposit)

### 10.6.2 SYSTEM POWER SWITCH

The System Power Switch controls Central Processor power as follows:

|            |                                                                                                  |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| OFF        | Power off for CPU.<br>Solid-State Memory still receives power in order to insure data retention. |
| POWER      | Power ON for CPU—normal use all console controls operable.                                       |
| PANEL LOCK | Power ON for CPU.<br>All console controls not operable except switch register.                   |

Note: Since the theory of operation of high speed solid state memory involves the retention of a capacitive charge, it is essential that power be continually supplied in order to insure full data retention during those periods when the CPU power is OFF. When this facility is not required, Memory Power may be discontinued by flipping the Master Power switch in the rear of the CPU mounting cabinet to OFF.

### 10.6.3 CENTRAL PROCESSOR STATE INDICATORS

This bank of indicator lights shows the current major system state as follows:

|       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| RUN   | The CPU is executing program instructions. If the instruction being executed is a WAIT instruction, the RUN light will be on. The CPU will proceed from the WAIT on receipt of an external interrupt, or on console intervention. |
| PAUSE | The CPU is inactive because:<br><br>1) The current instruction execution has been completed as far as possible without more data from the UNIBUS and the CPU is waiting to regain con-                                            |

trol of the UNIBUS (UNIBUS master-ship) (see MASTER state.)

OR

2) The CPU has been HALTed from the System Operator's Console.

MASTER

The CPU is in control of the UNIBUS (UNIBUS Master). The CPU relinquishes control of the UNIBUS during DMA and NPR data transfers.

USER

The CPU is executing program instructions in USER mode. When the Memory Management Unit is enabled all address references are in USER Virtual Address Space

SUPERVISOR

The CPU is executing program instructions in SUPERVISOR mode. When the Memory Management Unit is enabled, all address references are in SUPERVISOR Virtual Addressing space.

KERNEL

The CPU is executing program instructions in KERNEL mode. When the Memory Management Unit is enabled, all address references are in KERNEL Virtual Addressing space.

DATA

If on, the last memory reference was to D address space in the current CPU mode. If a 0, the last memory reference was to I address space in the current CPU mode.

#### 10.6.4 ADDRESS DISPLAY REGISTER

The Address Display Register is primarily a software development and maintenance aid. The contents of this 18-bit indicator are controlled by the Address Select knob as follows:

VIRTUAL

The Address Display Register indicates the current address reference as a 16-bit Virtual Address when the Memory Management Unit is enabled, otherwise it indicates the true 16-bit Physical Address. Bits 17 and 16 will be off unless the Memory Management Unit is disabled AND the current address references some UNIBUS device register in the uppermost 4K of basic address space (i.e. 28K-32K).

PROGRAM PHYSICAL

The Address Display Register indicates the current address reference as a true 18-bit Physical Address.

## CONSOLE PHYSICAL

The Address Display Register indicates the current address reference as a 16-bit Virtual Address when the Memory Management Unit is enabled otherwise it indicates the true 16-bit Physical Address.

Bits 17 and 16 indicate the contents of corresponding bits of the Switch Register as of the last LOAD ADRS console operation.

### 10.6.5 ADDRESSING ERROR DISPLAY

This 1-bit display indicates the occurrence of any addressing errors. The following address references are invalid:

1. Non-existent memory
2. Access Control violations
3. Unassigned memory pages

(See chapter 6: Memory Management)

### 10.6.6 DATA DISPLAY REGISTER

The Data Display Register is primarily a hardware maintenance facility. The contents of this 16-bit indicator are controlled by the Data Display Select knob as follows:

#### DATA PATHS

The Data Display Register indicates the current output of the PDP-11/45 Arithmetic/Logical Unit subsystem.

#### BUS REGISTER

The Data Display Register indicates the current output of the PDP-11/45 CPU (UNIBUS I, II and the EXPRESS BUS).

#### FPP $\mu$ ADRS.CPU $\mu$ ADRS.

The Data Display Register indicates the current ROM address, FPP control micro-program (bits 15-8), and the CPU control micro-program (bits 7-0).

#### DISPLAY

The Data Display Register indicates the current contents of the 16-bit write-only "Switch Register" located at Physical Address 777570. This register is generally used to display diagnostic information, although it can be used for any meaningful purpose.

### 10.6.7 SWITCH REGISTER

The functions of this 18-bit bank of switches are determined by:

- 1) Control Switches
- 2) Address Display Select knob

These functions will be described in the next section along with the appropriate control switch.

Note that the current setting of the Switch Register may be read under program control from a read-only register at Physical Address 777570.

### **10.6.8 CONTROL SWITCHES**

#### **LOAD ADRS (Load Address)**

When the LOAD ADRS switch is depressed the contents of the Switch Register are loaded into the CPU Bus Address Register and displayed in the Address Display Register lights. If the Memory Management Unit is disabled the address displayed is the true Physical Address.

If the Memory Management Unit is enabled the interpretation of the address indicated by the Switch Register is determined by the Address Display Select knob.

Note that the LOAD ADRS function does not distinguish between PROGRAM PHYSICAL and CONSOLE PHYSICAL.

#### **EXAM (Examine)**

Depressing the EXAM switch causes the contents of the current location specified in the CPU Bus Address Register to be displayed in the DATA Display Register.

Depressing the EXAM switch again causes a EXAM-STEP operation to occur. The result is the same as the EXAM except that the contents of the CPU Bus Address Register are incremented by two before the current location has been selected for display. An EXAM-STEP will not cross a 32K memory block boundary.

An EXAM operation which causes an ADRS ERR (Addressing Error) must be corrected by performing a new LOAD ADRS operation with a valid address.

#### **REG EXAM (Register Examine)**

Depressing the REG EXAM switch causes the contents of the General Purpose Register specified by the low order five bits of the bus address register to be displayed in the Data Display Register.

The Switch Register is interpreted as follows:

| Contents                         | Register Displayed            |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 0-5                              | General Registers 0-5 (set 0) |
| 6                                | Kernel Mode Register 6        |
| 7                                | Program Counter               |
| 10 <sub>8</sub> —15 <sub>8</sub> | General Register 0-5 (set 1)  |
| 16 <sub>8</sub>                  | Supervisor Mode Register 6    |
| 17 <sub>8</sub>                  | User Mode Register R6         |

#### **CONT (Continue)**

Depressing the CONT switch causes the CPU to resume executing in-

structions or bus cycles at the address specified in the Program Counter (Register 7-(PC)). The CONT switch has no effect when the CPU is in RUN state.

The function of the CONT switch is modified by the setting of the ENABLE/HALT and S/INST-S/BUS cycles switches as follows:

|             |                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ENABLE (up) | CPU resumes normal operation under program control.                                                                               |
| HALT (down) | A. S/INST (up)—CPU executes next instruction then stops.<br>B. S/BUS cycle (down)—CPU executes next address reference then stops. |

#### **ENABLE/HALT**

The ENABLE/HALT switch is a two-position switch with the following functions:

|             |                                                                     |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ENABLE (up) | The CPU is able to perform normal operations under program control. |
| HALT (down) | The CPU is stopped and is only operable by the console switches.    |

The setting of the ENABLE/HALT switch modifies the function of the CONTINUE (8.8.4) and START (8.8.7) switches.

#### **S/INST—S/BUS CYCLE (Single Instruction/Single Bus Cycle)**

The S/INST-S/BUS CYCLE switch effects only the operation of the CONTINUE switch as described in section 8.8.4. This switch has no effect on any switches when the ENABLE/HALT switch is set to ENABLE.

#### **START**

The functions of the START switch depend upon the setting of the ENABLE/HALT switch as follows:

|        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ENABLE | Depressing the START switch causes the CPU to start-executing program instructions at the address specified by the current contents of the CPU Bus Address Register. The START switch has no effect when the CPU is in RUN state. |
| HALT   | Depressing the START switch causes a console reset to occur.                                                                                                                                                                      |

#### **DEP (Deposit)**

Raising the DEP switch causes the current contents of the Switch Register to be deposited into the address specified by the current contents of the CPU Bus Address Register.

Raising the DEP switch again causes a DEP-STEP operation to occur. The result is the same as the DEP except that the contents of the CPU Bus Address Register are incremented by two before the current location

has been selected for the deposit operation. A DEP-STEP will not cross a 32K memory block boundary.

A DEP operation which causes an ADRS ERR (addressing Error) is aborted and must be corrected by performing a new LOAD ADRS operation with a valid address.

#### **REG DEPOSIT (Register Deposit)**

Raising the REG DEP causes the contents of the Switch Register to be deposited into the General Purpose Register specified by the current contents of the CPU Bus Address Register.

The CPU Bus Address Register should have been previously loaded by a LOAD ADRS operation according to the Switch register settings described in REG EXAM (8.8.3).

NOTE: The EXAM and DEP switches are coupled to enable an EXAM-DEP-EXAM sequence to be carried out on a location, without having to do a LOAD ADRS. The following sequence is possible:

EXAM

DEP ADDRESS A

EXAM

STEP EXAM

DEP ADDRESS A + 1

EXAM

#### **ADDRESS SELECT**

The ADDRESS SELECT knob is used for two functions. It provides an interpretation for the ADDRESS DISPLAY REGISTER as explained in section 8.4. It also determines for EXAM, STEP EXAM, DEP and STEP DEP, what set of Page Address Registers, if any, will be used to relocate the address loaded by the LD ADRS function.

KERNEL I, KERNEL D, SUPER I, SUPER D, USER I and USER D positions cause the address loaded into the switch register to be relocated if the Memory Management Option is installed and operating. Which set of the 6 sets of Page Address Registers (PARs) is used is determined by the ADDRESS SELECT switch. EXAMs, STEP EXAMs, DEPs and STEP DEPs, under these conditions, are relocated to the physical address specified by the appropriate PAR. If the action attempted from the console is not allowed (for example—attempting to DEP into a READ ONLY page) the ADRS ERROR indicator will come on. A new LD ADRS must be done to clear this condition. Note that, in the general case, the physical location accessed is different from the virtual address loaded into the switch register. The ADDRESS DISPLAY REGISTER will always, in these 6 positions, show exactly what was loaded from the switch register. These positions make it convenient to examine and change programs which are subject to relocation, without requiring any knowledge of where they have actually been relocated in physical memory.



**PROGRAM PHYSICAL.** This position is provided to allow one, when "single cycling" through a program, to monitor the physical addresses being accessed by the program. It is most useful when the accesses are being relocated by the Memory Management Option. In this case the Address shown in Address Display Register is different than that shown in the other positions. This position should *not* be used to perform EXAM, STEP-EXAM, DEP or STEP DEP functions.

**CONSOLE PHYSICAL—**This position is provided to allow EXAM, STEP EXAM, DEP and STEP DEP Functions to physical memory locations whether or not the Memory Management option is installed or operating. In this position the ADDRESS DISPLAY register indicates the physical address loaded from the switch register.



# PDP-11/45 MEMORY MANAGEMENT

The PDP-11/45 Memory Management Unit provides the hardware facilities necessary for complete memory management and protection. It is designed to be a memory management facility for systems where the system memory size is greater than 28K words and for multi-user, multi-programming systems where memory protection and relocation facilities are necessary.

In order to most effectively utilize the power and efficiency of the PDP-11/45 in medium and large scale systems it is necessary to run several programs simultaneously. In such multi-programming environments several user programs would be resident in memory at any given time. The task of the supervisory program would be: control the execution of the various user programs, manage the allocation of memory and peripheral device resources, and safeguard the integrity of the system as a whole by careful control of each user program.

In a multi-programming system, the Memory Management Unit provides the means for assigning memory pages to a user program and preventing that user from making any unauthorized access to these pages outside his assigned area. Thus, a user can effectively be prevented from accidental or willful destruction of any other user program or the system executive program.

The basic characteristics of the PDP-11/45 Memory Management Unit are:

- 16 User mode memory pages
- 16 Supervisor mode memory pages
- 16 Kernel mode memory pages
- 8 pages in each mode for instructions
- 8 pages in each mode for data
- page lengths from 32 to 4096 words
- each page provided with full protection and relocation
- transparent operation
- 6 modes of memory access control
- memory extension to 124K words (248K bytes)

### 11.1 PDP-11 FAMILY BASIC ADDRESSING LOGIC

The addresses generated by all PDP-11 Family Central Processor Units (CPUs) are 18-bit direct byte addresses. Although the PDP-11 Family word length and operational logic is all 16-bit length, the UNIBUS and CPU addressing logic actually is 18-bit length. Thus, while the PDP-11 word can only contain address references up to 32K words (64K bytes)

the CPU and UNIBUS can reference addresses up to 128K words (256K bytes). These extra two bits of addressing logic provide the basic framework for expanded memory operation.

In addition to the word length constraint on basic memory addressing space, the uppermost 4K words of address space is always reserved for UNIBUS I/O device registers. In a basic PDP-11/45 memory configuration (without the Memory Management Option) all address references to the uppermost 4K words of 16 bit address space (170000-177777) are converted to full 18-bit references with bits 17 and 16 always set to 1. Thus, a 16 bit reference to the I/O device register at address 173224 is automatically internally converted to a full 18-bit reference to the register at address 773224. Accordingly, the basic PDP-11/45 configuration can directly address up to 28K words of true memory, and 4K words of UNIBUS I/O device registers. Memory configurations beyond this require the PDP-11/45 Memory Management Unit.

## 11.2 VIRTUAL ADDRESSING

When the PDP-11/45 Memory Management Unit is operating, the normal 16 bit direct byte address is no longer interpreted as a direct Physical Address (PA) but as a Virtual Address (VA) containing information to be used in constructing a new 18-bit physical address. The information contained in the Virtual Address (VA) is combined with relocation information contained in the Page Address Register (PAR) to yield an 18-bit Physical Address (PA). Using the Memory Management Unit, memory can be dynamically allocated in pages each composed of from 1 to 128 integral blocks of 32 words.

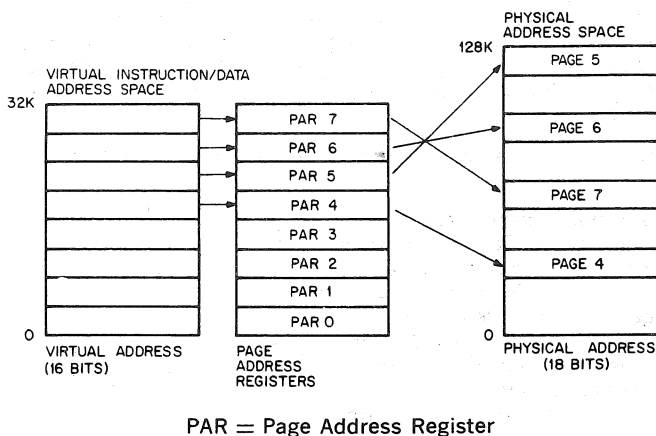


Figure 11-1 Virtual Address Mapping into Physical Address

The starting physical address for each page is an integral multiple of 32 words, and each page has a maximum size of 4096 words. Pages may be located anywhere within the 128K Physical Address space. The determination of which set of 16 page registers is used to form a Physical

Address is made by the current mode of operation of the CPU, i.e., Kernel, Supervisor or User mode.

### 11.3 INTERRUPT CONDITIONS UNDER MEMORY MANAGEMENT CONTROL

The Memory Management Unit relocates all addresses. Thus, when it is enabled, all trap, abort, and interrupt vectors are considered to be in Kernel mode Virtual Address Space. When a vectored transfer occurs, control is transferred according to a new Program Counter (PC) and Processor Status Word (PS) contained in a two-word vector relocated through the Kernel Page Address Register Set. Relocation of trap addresses means that the hardware is capable of recovering from a failure in the first physical bank of memory.

When a trap, abort, or interrupt occurs the "push" of the old PC, old PS is to the User/Supervisor/Kernel R6 stack specified by CPU mode bits 15,14 of the new PS in the vector (bits 15,14: 00 = Kernel, 01 = Supervisor, 11 = User). The CPU mode bits also determine the new PAR set. In this manner it is possible for a Kernel mode program to have complete control over service assignments for all interrupt conditions, since the interrupt vector is located in Kernel space. The Kernel program may assign the service of some of these conditions to a Supervisor or User mode program by simply setting the CPU mode bits of the new PS in the vector to return control to the appropriate mode.

### 11.4 CONSTRUCTION OF A PHYSICAL ADDRESS

All addresses with memory relocation enabled either reference information in instruction (I) Space or Data (D) Space. I Space is used for all instruction fetches, index words, absolute addresses and immediate operands, D Space is used for all other references. I Space and D Space each have 8 PAR's in each mode of CPU operation, Kernel, Supervisor, and User. Using Status Register #3, the operating system may select to disable D space and map all references (Instructions and Data) through I space, or to use both I and D space.

The basic information needed for the construction of a Physical Address (PA) comes from the Virtual Address (VA), which is illustrated in Figure 11-2, and the appropriate PAR set.

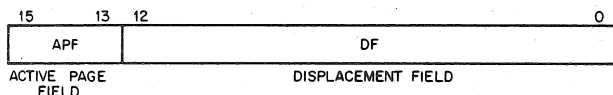


Figure 11-2 Interpretation of a Virtual Address

The Virtual Address (VA) consists of:

1. The Active Page Field (APF). This 3-bit field determines which of eight Page Address Registers (PAR0-PAR7) will be used to form the Physical Address (PA).
2. The Displacement Field (DF). This 13-bit field contains an address relative to the beginning of a page. This permits page lengths up to

4K words ( $2_{13} = 8K$  bytes). The DF is further subdivided into two fields as shown in Figure 11-3).

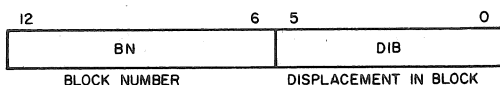


Figure 11-3 Displacement Field of Virtual Address

The Displacement Field (DF) consists of:

1. The Block Number (BN). This 7-bit field is interpreted as the block number within the current page.
2. The Displacement in Block (DIB). This 6-bit field contains the displacement within the block referred to by the Block Number (BN).

The remainder of the information needed to construct the Physical Address comes from the 12-bit Page Address Field (PAF) (part of the Page Address Register (PAR)) and specifies the starting address of the memory page which that PAR describes. The PAF is actually a block number in the physical memory, e.g.  $PAF = 3$  indicates a starting address of 96 ( $3 \times 32$ ) words in physical memory.

The formation of a physical address (PA) takes 90 ns. Thus in situations which do not require the facilities of the Memory Management Unit, it should be disabled to permit time savings.

The formation of the Physical Address (PA) is illustrated in Figure 11-4.

The logical sequence involved in constructing a Physical Address (PA) is as follows:

1. Select a set of Page Address Registers depending on the space being referenced.
2. The Active Page Field (APF) of the Virtual Address is used to select a Page Address Register (PAR0-PAR7).
3. The Page Address Field (PAF) of the selected Page Address Register (PAR) contains the starting address of the currently active page as a block number in physical memory.
4. The Block Number (BN) from the Virtual Address (VA) is added to the block number from the Page Address Field (PAF) to yield the number of the block in physical memory (PBN-Physical Block Number) which will contain the Physical Address (PA) being constructed.
5. The Displacement in Block (DIB) from the Displacement Field (DF) of the Virtual Address (VA) is joined to the Physical Block Number (PBN) to yield a true 18-bit PDP-11/45 Physical Address (PA).

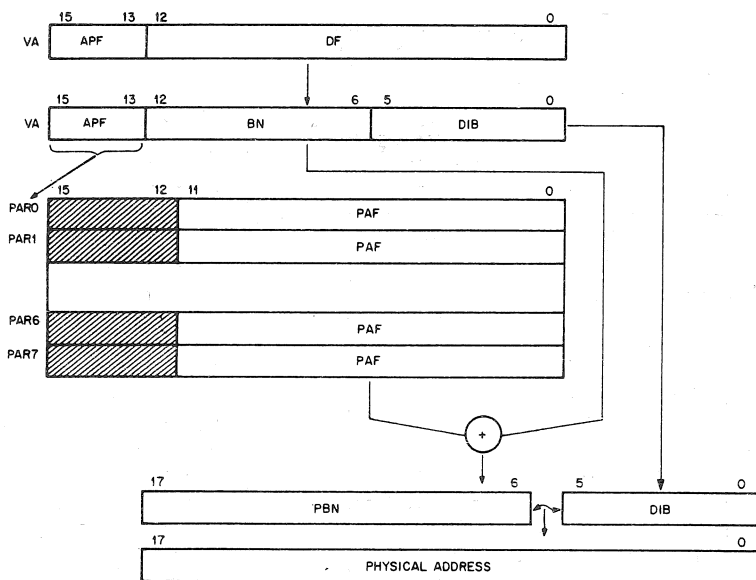


Figure 11-4 Construction of a Physical Address

## 11.5 MANAGEMENT REGISTERS

The PDP-11/45 Memory Management Unit implements three sets of 32 sixteen bit registers. One set of registers is used in Kernel mode, another in Supervisor, and the other in User mode. The choice of which set is to be used is determined by the current CPU mode contained in the Processor Status word. Each set is subdivided into two groups of 16 registers. One group is used for references to Instruction (I) Space, and one to Data (D) Space. The I Space group is used for all instruction fetches, index words, absolute addresses and immediate operands. The D Space group is used for all other references, providing it has not been disabled by Status Register #3. Each group is further subdivided into two parts of 8 registers. One part is the Page Address Register (PAR) whose function has been described in previous paragraphs. The other part is the Page Descriptor Register (PDR). PARs and PDRs are always selected in pairs by the top three bits of the virtual address. A PAR/PDR pair contain all the information needed to describe and locate a currently active memory page.

The various Memory Management Registers are located in the uppermost 4K of PDP-11 physical address space along with the UNIBUS I/O device registers. For the actual addresses of these registers refer to Memory Management Unit—Register Map, at the end of the chapter.

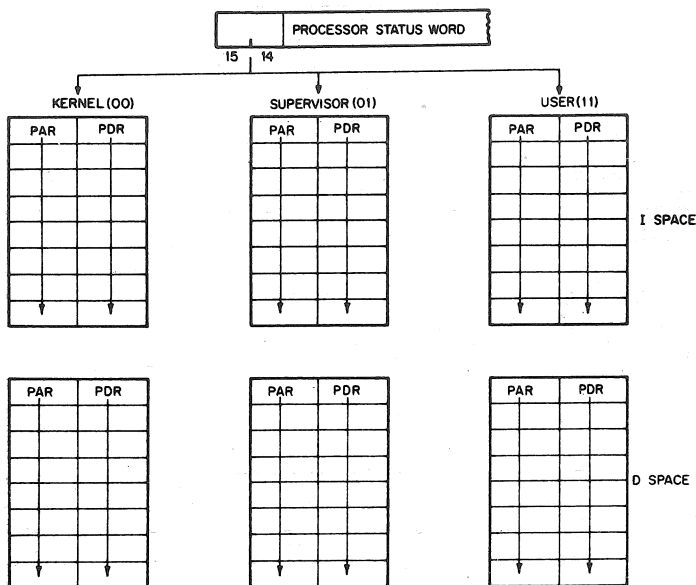


Figure 11-5 Active Page Registers

### 11.5.1 Page Address Registers (PAR)

The Page Address Register (PAR) contains the Page Address Field (PAF), a 12-bit field, which specifies the starting address of the page as a block number in physical memory.

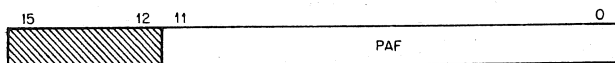


Figure 11-6 Page Address Register

Bits 15-12 of the PAR are unused and reserved for possible future use.

The Page Address Register (PAR) which contains the Page Address Field (PAF) may be alternatively thought of as a relocation register containing a relocation constant, or as a base register containing a base address. Either interpretation indicates the basic importance of the Page Address Register (PAR) as a relocation tool.

### 11.5.2 Page Descriptor Register

The Page Descriptor Register (PDR) contains information relative to page expansion, page length, and access control.



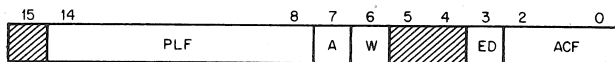


Figure 11-7 Page Description Register

### Access Control Field (ACF)

This three-bit field, occupying bits 2-0 of the Page Descriptor Register (PDR) contains the access rights to this particular page. The access codes or "keys" specify the manner in which a page may be accessed and whether or not a given access should result in a trap or an abort of the current operation. A memory reference which causes an abort is not completed while a reference causing a trap is completed. In fact, when a memory reference causes a trap to occur, the trap does not occur until the entire instruction has been completed. Aborts are used to catch "missing page faults," prevent illegal access, etc.; traps are used as an aid in gathering memory management information.

In the context of access control the term "write" is used to indicate the action of any instruction which modifies the contents of any addressable word. "Write" is synonymous with what is usually called a "store" or "modify" in many computer systems.

The modes of access control are as follows:

|     |              |                                                           |
|-----|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 000 | non-resident | abort all accesses                                        |
| 001 | read-only    | abort on write attempt memory management trap on read     |
| 010 | read-only    | abort on write attempt                                    |
| 011 | unused       | abort all accesses—reserved for future use                |
| 100 | read/write   | memory management trap upon completion of a read or write |
| 101 | read/write   | memory management trap upon completion of a write         |
| 110 | read/write   | no system trap/abort action                               |
| 111 | unused       | abort all accesses—reserved for future use                |

It should be noted that the use of I Space provides the user with a further form of protection, execute only.

### Access Information Bits

**A Bit (bit 7)**—This bit is used by software to determine whether or not any accesses to this page met the trap condition specified by the Access Control Field (ACF). (A = 1 is Affirmative) The A Bit is used in the process of gathering memory management statistics.

**W Bit (bit 6)**—This bit indicates whether or not this page has been modified (i.e. written into) since either the PAR or PDR was loaded. (W = 1 is Affirmative) The W Bit is useful in applications which involve disk swapping and memory overlays. It is used to determine which pages have been modified and hence must be saved in their new form and which pages have not been modified and can be simply overlaid.

Note that A and W bits are "reset" to "0" whenever either PAR or PDR is modified (written into).

### **Expansion Direction (ED)**

This one-bit field, located at bit 3 of the Page Descriptor Register (PDR), specifies whether the page expands upward from relative zero (ED = 0) or downwards toward relative zero (ED = 1). Relative zero, in this case, is the PAF (Page Address Field). Expansion is done by changing the Page Length Field. In expanding upwards, blocks with higher relative addresses are added; in expanding downwards, blocks with lower relative addresses are added to the page. Upward expansion is usually used to add more program space, while downward expansion is used to add more stack space.

### **Page Length Field (PLF)**

The seven-bit field, occupying bits 14-8 of the Page Descriptor Register (PDR), specifies the number of blocks in the page. A page consists of at least one and at most 128 blocks, and occupies contiguous core locations. If the page expands upwards, this field contains the length of the page minus one (in blocks). If the page expands downwards, this field contains 128 minus the length of the page (in blocks).

A Length Error occurs when the Block Number (BN) of the virtual address (VA) is greater than the Page Length Field (PLF), if the page expands upwards, or if the page expands downwards, when the BN is less than the PLF.

### **Reserved Bits**

Bits 15, 4 and 5 are reserved for future use, and are always 0.

## **11.6 FAULT RECOVERY REGISTERS**

Aborts and traps generated by the Memory Management hardware are vectored through Kernel virtual location 250, Status Registers #0, #1, #2 and #3 are used in order to differentiate an abort from a trap, determine why the abort or trap occurred, and allow for easy program restarting. Note that an abort or trap to a location which is itself an invalid address will cause another abort or trap. Thus the Kernel program must insure that Kernel Virtual Address 250 is mapped into a valid address, otherwise a loop will occur which will require console intervention.

### **11.6.1 Status Register #0 (SRO) (status and error indicators)**

SRO contains error flags, the page number whose reference caused the abort, and various other status flags. The register is organized as shown in Figure 11-8.

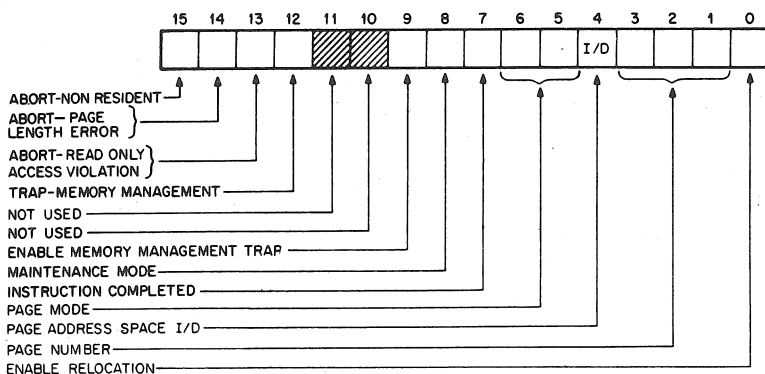


Figure 11-8 Format of Status Register #0 (SR0)

Bits 15-12 are the error flags. They may be considered to be in a "priority queue" in that "flags to the right" are less significant and should be ignored. That is, a "non-resident" fault service routine would ignore length, access control, and memory management flags. A "page length" service routine would ignore access control and memory management faults, etc.

Bits 15-13 when set (error conditions) cause Memory Management to freeze the contents of bits 1-7 and Status Registers #1 and #2. This has been done to facilitate error recovery.

Bits 15-12 are enabled by a signal called "RELOC." "RELOC" is true when an address is being relocated by the Memory Management unit. This implies that either SR0, bit 0 is equal to 1 (relocation operating) or that SR0, bit 8 (MAINTENANCE) is equal to 1 and the memory reference is the final one of a destination calculation (maintenance/destination mode).

Note that Status Register #0 (SR0) bits 0, 8, and 9 can be set under program control to provide meaningful control information. However, information written into all other bits is not meaningful. Only that information which is automatically written into these remaining bits as a result of hardware actions is useful as a monitor of the status of the Memory Management Unit. Setting bits 15-12 under program control will not cause traps to occur; these bits however must be reset to 0 after an abort or trap has occurred in order to resume status monitoring.

#### Abort—Non-Resident

Bit 15 is the "Abort—Non-Resident" bit. It is set by attempting to access a page with an Access Control Field (ACF) key equal to 0, 3, or 7. It is also set by attempting to use Memory Relocation with a processor mode of 2.

### **Abort—Page Length**

Bit 14 is the "Abort Page Length" bit. It is set by attempting to access a location in a page with a block number (Virtual Address bits, 12-6) that is outside the area authorized by the Page Length Field (PLF) of the Page Descriptor Register (PDR) for that page. Bits 14 and 15 may be set simultaneously by the same access attempt.

### **Abort—Read Only**

Bit 13 is the "Abort—Read Only" bit. It is set by attempting to write in a "Read-Only" page. "Read-Only" pages have access keys of 1 or 2.

### **Trap—Memory Management**

Bit 12 is the "Trap—Memory Management" bit. It is set by a read operation which references a page with an Access Control Field (ACF) of 1 or 4, or by a write operation to a page with an ACF key of 4 or 5.

### **Bits 11, 10**

Bits 11 and 10 are spare locations and are always equal to 0. They are unused and reserved for possible future expansion.

### **Enable Memory Management Traps**

Bit 9 is the "Enable Memory Management Traps" bit. It can be set or cleared by doing a direct write into SRO. If bit 9 is 0, no Memory Management traps will occur. The A and W bits will, however, continue to log potential Memory Management Traps. When bit 9 is set to 1, the next "potential" Memory Management trap will cause a trap, vectored through Kernel Virtual Address 250.

Note that if an instruction which sets bit 9 to 0 (disable Memory Management Trap) causes a potential Memory Management trap in the course of any of its memory references prior to the one actually changing SRO, then the trap will occur at the end of the instruction anyway.

### **Maintenance/Destination Mode**

Bit 8 specifies Maintenance use of the Memory Management Unit. It is provided for diagnostic purposes only and must not be used for other purposes.

### **Instruction Completed**

Bit 7 indicates that the current instruction has been completed. It will be set to 0 during T bit, Parity, Odd Address, and Time Out traps and interrupts. This provides error handling routines with a way of determining whether the last instruction will have to be repeated in the course of an error recovery attempt. Bit 7 is Read-Only (it cannot be written). It is initialized to a 1. Note that EMT, TRAP, BPT, and IOT do not set bit 7.

### **Processor Mode**

Bits 5, 6 indicate the CPU mode (User/Supervisor/Kernel) associated with the page causing the abort. (Kernel = 00, Supervisor = 01, User = 11). If an illegal mode (10) is specified, bit 15 will be set and an abort will occur.

### **Page Address Space**

Bit 4 indicates the type of address space (I or D) the Unit was in when a fault occurred (0 = I Space, 1 = D Space). It is used in conjunction with bits 3-1, Page Number.

### Page Number

Bits 3-1 contain the page number of a reference causing a Memory Management fault. Note that pages, like blocks, are numbered from 0 upwards.

### Enable Relocation

Bit 0 is the "Enable Relocation" bit. When it is set to 1, all addresses are relocated by the unit. When bit 0 is set to 0 the Memory Management Unit is inoperative and addresses are not relocated or protected.

### 11.6.2 Status Register #1 (SR1)

SR1 records any autoincrement/decrement of the general purpose registers, including explicit references through the PC. SR1 is cleared at the beginning of each instruction fetch. Whenever a general purpose register is either autoincremented or autodecremented the register number and the amount (in 2s complement notation) by which the register was modified, is written into SR1.

The information contained in SR1 is necessary to accomplish an effective recovery from an error resulting in an abort. The low order byte is written first and it is not possible for a PDP-11 instruction to autoincrement/decrement more than two general purpose registers per instruction before an "abort-causing" reference. Register numbers are recorded "MOD 8"; thus it is up to the software to determine which set of registers (User/Supervisor/Kernel—General Set 0/General Set 1) was modified, by determining the CPU and Register modes as contained in the PS at the time of the abort. The 6-bit displacement on R6(SP) that can be caused by the MARK instruction cannot occur if the instruction is aborted.

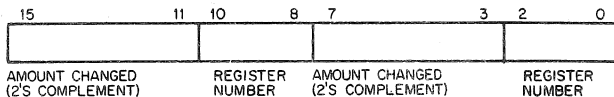


Figure 11-9 Format of Status Register #1 (SR1)

### 11.6.3 Status Register #2

SR2 is loaded with the 16-bit Virtual Address (VA) at the beginning of each instruction fetch, or with the address Trap Vector at the beginning of an interrupt, "T" Bit trap, Parity, Odd Address, and Timeout traps. Note that SR2 does not get the Trap Vector on EMT, TRAP, BPT and IOT instructions. SR2 is Read-Only; it can not be written. SR2 is the Virtual Address Program Counter.

### 11.6.4 Status Register #3

The Status Register #3 (SR3) enables or disables the use of the D space PAR's and PDR's. When D space is disabled, all references use the I space registers; when D space is enabled, both the I space and D space registers are used. Bit 0 refers to the User's Registers, Bit 1 to the Supervisor's, and Bit 2 to the Kernel's. When the appropriate bits are set D space is enabled; when clear, it is disabled. Bits 3-15 are unused. On initialization this register is set to 0 and only I space is in use.

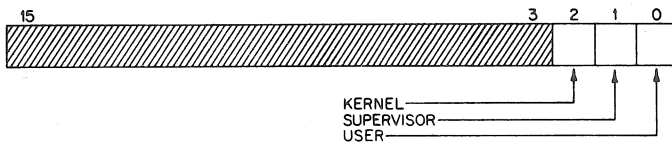


Figure 11-10 Format of Status Register #3 (SR3)

### 11.6.5 Instruction Back-Up/Restart Recovery

The process of "backing-up" and restarting a partially completed instruction involves:

1. Performing the appropriate memory management tasks to alleviate the cause of the abort (e.g. loading a missing page, etc.)
2. Restoring the general purpose registers indicated in SR1 to their original contents at the start of the instruction by subtracting the "modify value" specified in SR1.
3. Restoring the PC to the "abort-time" PC by loading R7 with the contents of SR2, which contains the value of the Virtual PC at the time the "abort-generating" instruction was fetched.

Note that this back-up/restart procedure assumes that the general purpose register used in the program segment will not be used by the abort recovery routine. This is automatically the case if the recovery program uses a different general register set.

### 11.6.6 Clearing Status Registers Following Trap/Abort

At the end of a fault service routine bits 15-12 of SR0 must be cleared (set to 0) to resume error checking. On the next memory reference following the clearing of these bits, the various Status Registers will resume monitoring the status of the addressing operations (SR2), will be loaded with the next instruction address, SSR1 will store register change information and SR0 will log Memory Management Status information.

## 11.7 EXAMPLES

### 11.7.1 Normal Usage

The Memory Management Unit provides a very general purpose memory management tool. It can be used in a manner as simple or complete as desired. It can be anything from a simple memory expansion device to a very complete memory management facility.

The variety of possible and meaningful ways to utilize the facilities offered by the Memory Management Unit means that both single-user and multi-programming systems have complete freedom to make whatever memory management decisions best suit their individual needs. Although a knowledge of what most types of computer systems seek to achieve may indicate that certain methods of utilizing the Memory Management Unit will be more common than others, there is no limit to the ways to use these facilities.

In most normal applications, it is assumed that the control over the actual memory page assignments and their protection resides in a supervisory type program which would operate at the nucleus of a CPU's executive (Kernel mode). It is further assumed that this Kernel mode program would set access keys in such a way as to protect itself from willful or accidental destruction by other Supervisor mode or User mode programs. The facilities are also provided such that the nucleus can dynamically assign memory pages of varying sizes in response to system needs.

### 11.7.2 Typical Memory Page

When the Memory Management Unit is enabled, the Kernel mode program, a Supervisor mode program and a User mode program each have eight active pages described by the appropriate Page Address Registers and Page Descriptor Registers for data, and eight, for instructions. Each segment is made up of from 1 to 128 blocks and is pointed to by the Page Address Field (PAF) of the corresponding Page Address Register (PAR) is illustrated in Figure 11-11.

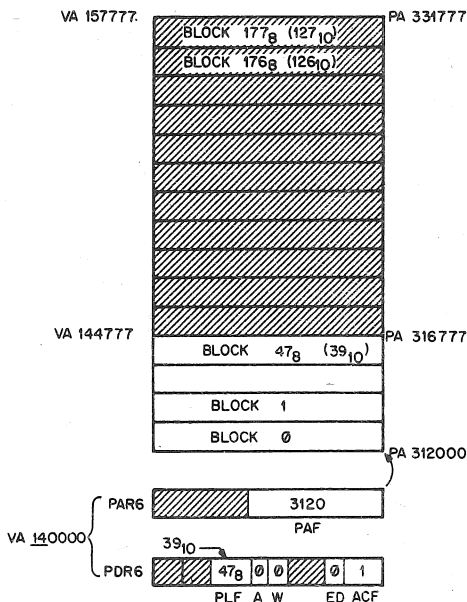


Figure 11-11 Typical Memory Page

The memory segment illustrated in Figure 6-11 has the following attributes:

1. Page Length: 40 blocks.
2. Virtual Address Range: 140000—144777.
3. Physical Address Range: 312000—316777.

4. No trapped access has been made to this page.
5. Nothing has been modified (i.e. written) in this page.
6. Read-Only Protection.
7. Upward Expansion.

These attributes were determined according to the following scheme:

1. Page Address Register (PAR6) and Page Descriptor Register (PDR6) were selected by the Active Page Field (APF) of the Virtual Address (VA). (Bits 15-13 of the VA =  $6_8$ .)
2. The initial address of the page was determined from the Page Address Field (PAF) of APR6 ( $312000 = 3120_8 \text{ blocks} \times 40_8 (32_{10}) \text{ words per block} \times 2 \text{ bytes per word}$ ).

Note that the PAR which contains the PAF constitutes what is often referred to as a base register containing a base address or a relocation register containing relocation constant.

3. The page length ( $47_8 + 1 = 40_{10} \text{ blocks}$ ) was determined from the Page Length Field (PLF) contained in Page Descriptor Register PDR6. Any attempts to reference beyond these  $40_{10}$  blocks in this page will cause a "Page Length Error," which will result in an abort, vectored through Kernel Virtual Address 250.
4. The Physical Addresses were constructed according to the scheme illustrated in Figure 6-4.
5. The Access bit (A-bit) of PDR6 indicates that no trapped access has been made to this page (A bit = 0). When an illegal or trapped reference, (i.e. a violation of the Protection Mode specified by the Access Control Field (ACF) for this page), or a trapped reference (i.e. Read in this case), occurs, the A-bit will be set to a 1.
6. The Written bit (W-bit) indicates that no locations in this page have been modified (i.e. written). If an attempt is made to modify any location in this particular page, an Access Control Violation Abort will occur. If this page were involved in a disk swapping or memory overlay scheme, the W-bit would be used to determine whether it had been modified and thus required saving before overlay.
7. This page is Read-Only protected; i.e. no locations in this page may be modified. In addition, a memory management trap will occur upon completion of a read access. The mode of protection was specified by the Access Control Field (ACF) of PDR6.
8. The direction of expansion is upward (ED = 0). If more blocks are required in this segment, they will be added by assigning blocks with higher relative addresses.

Note that the various attributes which describe this page can all be determined under software control. The parameters describing the page are all loaded into the appropriate Page Address Register (PAR) and Page Descriptor Register (PDR) under program control. In a normal applica-



tion it is assumed that the particular page which itself contains these registers would be assigned to the control of a supervisory type program operating in Kernel mode.

### 11.7.3 Non-Consecutive Memory Pages

It should be noted at this point that although the correspondence between Virtual Addresses (VA) and PAR/PDR pairs is such that higher VAs have higher PAR/PDR's, this does not mean that higher Virtual Addresses (VA) necessarily correspond to higher Physical Addresses (PA). It is quite simple to set up the Page Address Fields (PAF) of the PAR's in such a way that higher Virtual Address blocks may be located in lower Physical Address blocks as illustrated in Figure 11-12.

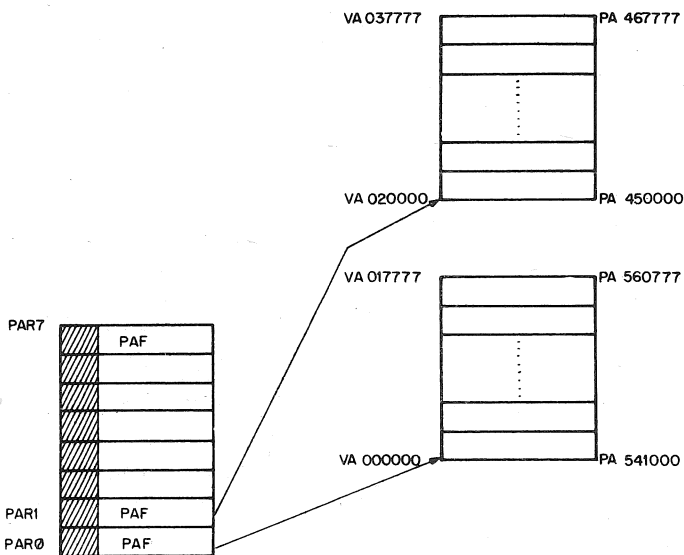


Figure 11-12 Non-Consecutive Memory Pages

Note that although a single memory page must consist of a block of contiguous locations, memory pages as macro units do not have to be located in consecutive Physical Address (PA) locations. It also should be realized that the assignment of memory pages is not limited to consecutive non-overlapping Physical Address (PA) locations.

### 11.7.4 Stack Memory Pages

When constructing PDP-11/45 programs it is often desirable to isolate all program variables from "pure code" (i.e. program instructions) by placing them on a register indexed stack. These variables can then be "pushed" or "popped" from the stack area as needed (see Chapter 3, Addressing Modes). Since all PDP-11 Family stacks expand by adding

locations with lower addresses, when a memory page which contains "stacked" variables needs more room it must "expand down," i.e. add blocks with lower relative addresses to the current page. This mode of expansion is specified by setting the Expansion Direction (ED) bit of the appropriate Page Descriptor Register (PDR) to a 1. Figure 11-13. illustrates a typical "stack" memory page. This page will have the following parameters:

PAR6: PAF = 3120

PDR6: PLF =  $175_8$  or  $125_{10}$  ( $128_{10} - 3$ )

ED = 1

A = 0 or 1

W = 0 or 1

ACF = nnn (to be determined by programmer as the need dictates).

note: the A, W bits will normally be set by hardware.

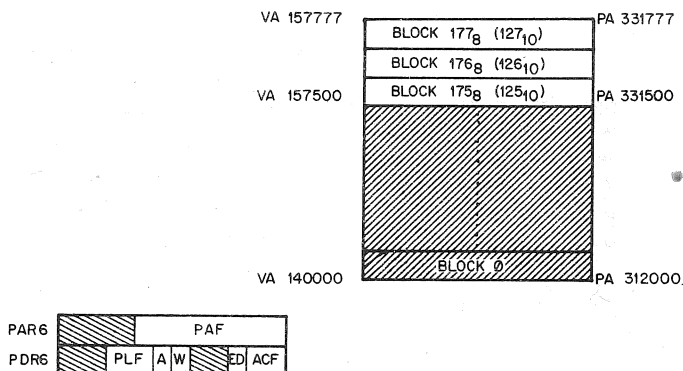


Figure 11-13 Typical Stack Memory Page

In this case the stack begins 128 blocks above the relative origin of this memory page and extends downward for a length of three blocks. A "PAGE LENGTH ERROR" abort vectored through Kernel Virtual Address (VA) 250 will be generated by the hardware when an attempt is made to reference any location below the assigned area, i.e. when the Block Number (BN) from the Virtual Address (VA) is less than the Page Length Field (PLF) of the appropriate Page Descriptor Register (PDR).

### **11.8 TRANSPARENCY**

It should be clear at this point that in a multiprogramming application it is possible for memory pages to be allocated in such a way that a particular program seems to have a complete 32K basic PDP-11/45 memory configuration. Using Relocation, a Kernel Mode supervisory-type program can easily perform all memory management tasks in a manner entirely transparent to a Supervisor or User mode program. In effect, a PDP-11/45 System can utilize its resources to provide maximum throughput and response to a variety of users each of which seems to have a powerful system "all to himself."

### **11.9 INSTRUCTIONS**

Four additional instructions are used with the PDP-11/45 Memory Management unit.

|      |                                      |
|------|--------------------------------------|
| MTPI | move to previous instruction space   |
| MTPD | move to previous data space          |
| MFPI | move from previous instruction space |
| MFPD | move from previous data space        |

## MFPI

Move from Previous Instruction Space

0065SS



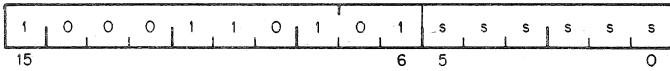
**Operation:** (temp)  $\leftarrow$  {src}  
 $\downarrow$ (SP)  $\leftarrow$  (temp)

**Condition Codes:** N: set if the source  $<0$ ; otherwise cleared  
Z: set if the source  $=0$ ; otherwise cleared  
V: cleared  
C: unaffected

**Description:** This instruction is provided in order to allow inter-address space communication when the PDP11/45 is using the Memory Management unit. The address of the source operand is determined in the current address space. That is, the address is determined using the SP and memory pages determined by PS<15:14>. The address itself is then used in the previous I space (as determined by PS<13:12>) to get the source operand. This operand is then pushed onto the current R6 stack.

Move from Previous Data Space

1065SS



**Operation:** (temp) ← (src)  
 ↓(SP) ← (temp)

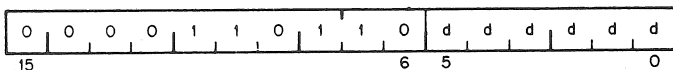
**Condition Codes:** N: set if the source <0; otherwise cleared  
 Z: set if the source =0; otherwise cleared  
 V: cleared  
 C: unaffected

**Description:** This instruction is provided in order to allow inter-address space communication when the PDP-11/45 is using the Memory Management unit. The address of the source operand is determined in the current address space. That is, the address is determined using the SP and memory pages determined by PS<15:14>. The address itself is then used in the previous D space (as determined by PS<13:12>) to get the source operand. This operand is then pushed on to the current R6 stack.

## MTPI

Move to Previous Instruction Space

0066DD



**Operation:** (temp) ← (SP)↑  
(dst) ← (temp)

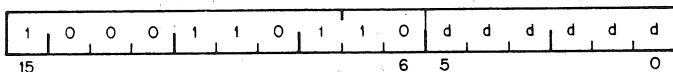
**Condition Codes:** N: set if the source < 0; otherwise cleared  
Z: set if the source = 0; otherwise cleared  
V: cleared  
C: unaffected

**Description:** The address of the destination operand is determined in the current address space. MTPI then pops a word off the current stack and stores that word in the destination address in the previous mode's I space (bits 13, 12 of PS).

## MTPD

Move to Previous Data Space

1066DD



**Operation:** (temp) ← (SP)↑  
(dst) ← (temp)

**Condition Codes:** N: set if the source < 0; otherwise cleared  
Z: set if the source = 0; otherwise cleared  
V: cleared  
C: unaffected

**Description:** The address of the destination operand is determined in the current address space as in MTPI. MTPD then pops a word off the current stack and stores that word in the destination address in the previous mode's D space.

## 11.10 MEMORY MANAGEMENT UNIT—REGISTER MAP

| REGISTER                                        | ADDRESS |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Status Register #0(SR0)                         | 777572  |
| Status Register #1(SR1)                         | 777574  |
| Status Register #2(SR2)                         | 777576  |
| Status Register #3(SR3)                         | 777516  |
| User I Space Descriptor Register (UISDR0)       | 777600  |
| .                                               | .       |
| .                                               | .       |
| User I Space Descriptor Register (UISDR7)       | 777616  |
| User D Space Descriptor Register (UDSDR0)       | 777620  |
| .                                               | .       |
| .                                               | .       |
| User D Space Descriptor Register (UDSDR7)       | 777636  |
| User I Space Address Register (UISAR0)          | 777640  |
| .                                               | .       |
| .                                               | .       |
| User I Space Address Register (UISAR7)          | 777656  |
| User D Space Address Register (UDSAR0)          | 777660  |
| .                                               | .       |
| .                                               | .       |
| User D Space Address Register (UDSAR7)          | 777676  |
| Supervisor I Space Descriptor Register (SISDR0) | 777200  |
| .                                               | .       |
| .                                               | .       |
| Supervisor I Space Descriptor Register (SISDR7) | 777216  |
| Supervisor D Space Descriptor Register (SDSDR0) | 777226  |
| .                                               | .       |
| .                                               | .       |
| Supervisor D Space Descriptor Register (SDSDR7) | 777236  |
| Supervisor I Space Address Register (SISAR0)    | 777240  |
| .                                               | .       |
| .                                               | .       |
| Supervisor I Space Address Register (SISAR7)    | 777256  |

| REGISTER                                     | ADDRESS |
|----------------------------------------------|---------|
| Supervisor D Space Address Register (SDSAR0) | 772260  |
| .                                            | .       |
| Supervisor D Space Address Register (SDSDR7) | 772276  |
| Kernel I Space Descriptor Register (KISDR0)  | 772300  |
| .                                            | .       |
| Kernel I Space Descriptor Register (KIDSR7)  | 772316  |
| Kernel D Space Descriptor Register (KDSDR0)  | 772320  |
| .                                            | .       |
| Kernel D Space Descriptor Register (KDSDR7)  | 772336  |
| Kernel I Space Address Register (KISAR0)     | 772340  |
| .                                            | .       |
| Kernel I Space Address Register (KISAR7)     | 772356  |
| Kernel D Space Address Register (KDSAR0)     | 772360  |
| .                                            | .       |
| Kernel D Space Address Register (KDSAR7)     | 772376  |



## PDP-11/45 FLOATING POINT PROCESSOR

### 12.1 INTRODUCTION

The Floating Point Processor is an optional arithmetic processor which fits integrally into the PDP-11/45 Central Processor. It performs all floating point arithmetic operations and converts data between integer and floating point formats.

The hardware provides a time and money saving alternative to the use of software floating point routines. Its use can result in many orders of magnitude improvement in the execution of arithmetic operations.

The features of the unit are:

- Overlapped operation with central processor
- High speed
- Single and double precision (32 or 64 bit) floating point modes
- Flexible addressing modes
- Six 64-bit floating point accumulators
- Error recovery aids.

### 12.2 OPERATION

The Floating Point Processor is an integral part of the Central Processor. It operates using similar address modes, and the same memory management facilities provided by the Memory Management Option, as the Central Processor. Floating Point Processor instructions can reference the floating point accumulators, the Central Processor's general registers, or any location in memory.

When, in the course of a program, an FPP Instruction is fetched from memory, the FPP will execute that instruction in parallel with the CPU continuing with its instruction sequence. The CPU is delayed a very short period of time during the FPP instruction's Fetch operation, and then is free to proceed independently of the FPP. The interaction between the two processors is automatic, and a program can take full advantage of the parallel operation of the two processors by intermixing Floating Point Processor and Central Processor instructions.

Interaction between Floating Point Processor and Central Processor instructions is automatically taken care of by the hardware. When an FPP instruction is encountered in a program, the machine first checks the status of the Floating Point Processor. If the FPP is "busy," the CPU will wait until it is "done" before continuing execution of the program.

LDD (R3)+,AC3      ;Pick up constant operand and place it in AC3.

ADDLP: LDD (R3)+,AC0      ;Load AC0 with next value in table

```

MUL AC3,AC0      ;and multiply by constant in AC3
ADDD AC0,AC1      ;and add the result into AC1
SOB R5,ADDLP      ;check to see whether done
STCDI AC1,@R4     ;done, convert double to integer and store

```

In the above example the Floating Point Processor would execute the next three instructions. After the "ADDD" was fetched into the FPP, the CPU would execute the "SOB" and then wait for the FPP to be "done" with the "ADDD" before giving it the "LDD" or "STCDI" instruction.

As can be seen from this example, autoincrement and autodecrement addressing automatically adds or subtracts the correct amount to the contents of the register depending on the modes represented by the instruction.

### 12.3 ARCHITECTURE

The Floating Point Processor contains scratch registers, a Floating Exception Address pointer (FEA), a Program Counter, a set of Status and Error Registers, and six general purpose accumulators (AC0-AC5).

Each accumulator is interpreted to be 32 or 64 bits long depending on the instruction and the status of the Floating Point Processor. For 32-bit instructions only the left-most 32 bits are used, while the remaining 32 bits remain unaffected.

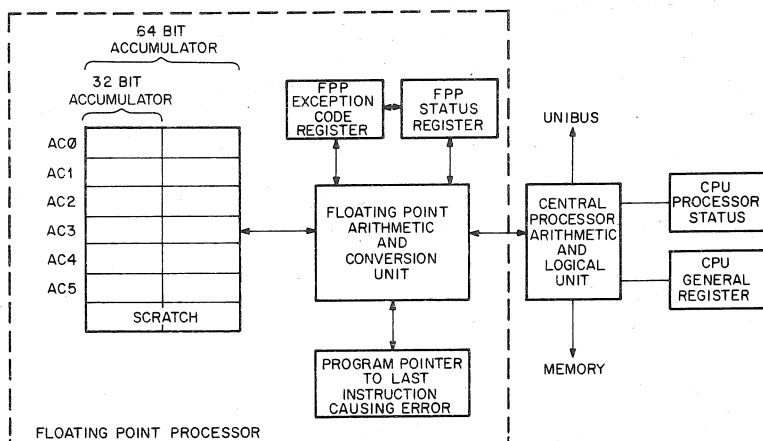


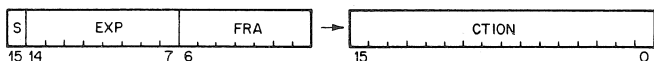
Figure 12-1 Floating Point Processor

The six Floating Point Accumulators are used in numeric calculations and interaccumulator data transfers; the first four (AC0-AC3) are also used for all data transfers between the FPP and the General Registers or Memory.

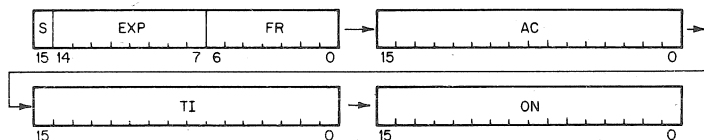
## 12.4 FLOATING POINT DATA FORMATS

The FPP handles two types of floating point data: Single Precision or Floating Mode (F) which is 32 bits long, and Double Precision (D) which is 64 bits long. The exponent is stored in excess 128 ( $200_8$ ) notation. Exponents from  $-128$  to  $+127$  are therefore represented by the binary equivalent of 0 to 255 ( $0-377_8$ ). Fractions are represented in sign-magnitude notation with the binary radix point to the left. Numbers are assumed to be normalized and, therefore, the most significant bit is not stored because it is redundant. It is always a 1 except where the exponent is zero, then the complete number is declared to be 0.

F Formats:



D Formats:



S = Sign of Fraction

EXP = Exponent in excess  $200_8$  notation

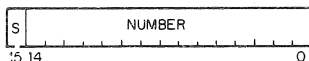
FRACTION = 23 bits in F Format, 55 bits in D Format, + one hidden bit (normalization). Binary Radix point to the left.

The results of a Floating Point operation may be either truncated or rounded off. "Rounding" rounds away from zero and thus increases the absolute value of the number.

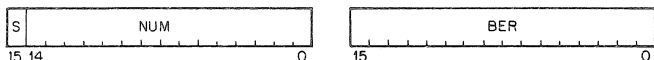
The FPP provides for conversion of Floating Point to Integer Format and vice-versa. The processor thus recognizes single precision integer (I) and double precision integer long (L) numbers.

The numbers are stored in standard two's complement form.

I Format:



L Format:



S = Sign of Number

NUMBER = 15 bits in I Format, 31 bits in L Format.

## 12.5 FLOATING POINT UNIT STATUS REGISTER

This register provides mode control for the floating point unit, as well as the condition code and error recovery information from the execution of the previous instruction.

Four bits control the modes of operation:

Single/Double—Floating Point numbers can be either single or double precision.

Long/Short—Integer numbers can be 16 bits or 32 bits long.

Truncate/Round—The result of Floating Point operation can be either truncated or rounded off.

Normal/Maintenance—a special maintenance mode is available.

There are four condition codes:

Carry, overflow, zero, and negative, which are equivalent to the CPU condition codes, and five error interrupts which can be disabled individually or as a group.

|     |     |        |      |     |     |     |    |    |    |     |    |    |    |    |   |
|-----|-----|--------|------|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|-----|----|----|----|----|---|
| FER | FID | UNUSED | FIUV | FIU | FIV | FIC | FD | FL | FT | FMM | FN | FZ | FV | FC |   |
| 15  | 14  | 13     | 12   | 11  | 10  | 9   | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5   | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0 |

| BIT | NAME                                   | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15  | Floating Error (FER)                   | Floating Point Error flag. The result of the last operation resulted in a Floating Point Exception and the individual interrupt (FIUV, FIU, FIV, FIC) was enabled.                                                                                              |
| 14  | Interrupt Disable (FID)                | All FPP interrupts disabled when this bit is set.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 13  | Not Used                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 12  | Not Used                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 11  | Interrupt on Undefined Variable (FIUV) | When set and a $-0$ is obtained from memory, an interrupt will occur. When clear, $-0$ can be loaded and used in any arithmetic operation.                                                                                                                      |
| 10  | Interrupt on Underflow (FIU)           | When set, Floating Underflow will cause an interrupt. The result of the operation, causing the interrupt, will be correct except for the exponent which will be off by $+400_8$ . If the bit is reset and the underflow occurs, the result will be set to zero. |

| BIT | NAME                                        | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9   | Interrupt on Overflow (FIV)                 | When set, Floating Overflows will cause an interrupt. The result of the operation causing the interrupt will be correct except for the exponent which will be off by $+400_{10}$ . If the bit is reset, the result of the operation will be the same as detailed above but no interrupt will occur.                                          |
| 8   | Interrupt on Integer Conversion Error (FIC) | When set, and the STCFI (Store and Convert Floating to Integer) instruction causes FC to be set, an interrupt will occur. If the interrupt occurs, the destination is set to 0 and all other registers are left untouched. If the bit is reset, the result of the operation will be the same as detailed above, but no interrupt will occur. |
| 7   | Floating Double Precision Mode (FD)         | Determines the precision that is used for Floating Point calculations. When set, Double precision is assumed; when reset Floating precision is used.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 6   | Floating Long Integer Mode (FL)             | Active in conversion between Integer and Floating Point format. When set, the Integer format assumed is Double Precision two's complement (i.e. 31 bits + sign). When reset, the integer format is assumed to be Single Precision two's complement (i.e. 15 bits + sign).                                                                    |
| 5   | Floating Truncate Mode (FT)                 | When set, causes the result of any arithmetic operation to be truncated. When reset, the results are rounded.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4   | Floating Maintenance Mode (FMM)             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 3   | Floating Negative (FN)                      | The result of the last operation was negative.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 2   | Floating Zero (FZ)                          | The result of the last operation was zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 1   | Floating Overflow (FV)                      | The result of the last operation resulted in an arithmetic overflow.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

| BIT | NAME                | DESCRIPTION                                                                                                                            |
|-----|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0   | Floating Carry (FC) | The result of the last operation resulted in a carry of the most significant bit. This can only occur in integer-Floating conversions. |

## 12.6 FEC REGISTER: ERROR DETECTION

One Interrupt vector is assigned to take care of all floating point exceptions (location 244). The eight possible errors causing the trap are coded in a four bit register, the FPP's Exception Code, "FEC," Register.

The error assignments are as follows:

|    |                                   |
|----|-----------------------------------|
| 0  | Not used                          |
| 2  | Floating OP Code Error            |
| 4  | Floating Divide by Zero           |
| 6  | Floating Integer Conversion Error |
| 8  | Floating Overflow                 |
| 10 | Floating Underflow                |
| 12 | Floating Undefined Variable       |
| 14 | Maintenance Trap                  |

## 12.7 FLOATING POINT PROCESSOR INSTRUCTION ADDRESSING

Floating Point Processor instructions use the same type of addressing as the Central Processor instructions. A source or destination operand is specified by designating one of eight addressing modes and one of eight central processor general registers to be used in the specified mode. The modes of addressing are the same as those of the central processor except for mode 0. In mode 0 the operand is located in the designated Floating Point Processor Accumulator, rather than in a Central processor general register. The modes of addressing:

- 0 = Direct Accumulator
- 1 = Deferred
- 2 = Auto-increment
- 3 = Auto-increment deferred
- 4 = Auto-decrement
- 5 = Auto-decrement deferred
- 6 = Indexed
- 7 = Indexed deferred

Autoincrement and autodecrement operate on increments and decrements of 4 for F Format and  $10_8$  for D Format.

In mode 0, the user can make use of all six FPP accumulators (ACO—AC5) as his source or destination. In all other modes, which involve transfer of data from memory or the general register, the user is restricted to the first four FPP accumulators (ACO—AC3).

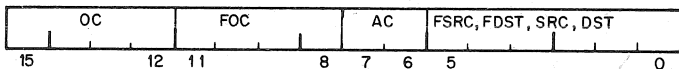
In immediate addressing (Mode 2, R7) only 16 bits are loaded or stored.

## 12.8 FLOATING POINT INSTRUCTIONS

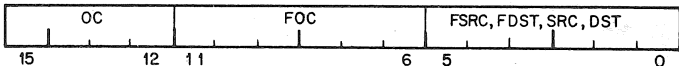
Each instruction that references a floating point number can operate on floating or double precision numbers depending on the state of the FD mode bit. In a similar fashion, there is a mode bit FL that determines whether a 32-bit integer (FL = 1) or a 16-bit integer (FL = 0) is used in conversion between integer and floating point representation. FSRC and FDST use floating point addressing modes, SRC and DST use CPU addressing Modes.

### Floating Point Instruction Format

#### Double Operand Addressing



#### Single Operand Addressing



OC = Op Code = 17

FOC = Floating Op Code

AC = Accumulator

FSRC, FDST use FPP Address Modes

SRC, DST use CPU Address Modes

### General Definitions:

XL = largest fraction that can be represented:

$$1-2^{-24}; \text{FD} = 0$$

$$1-2^{-56}; \text{FD} = 1$$

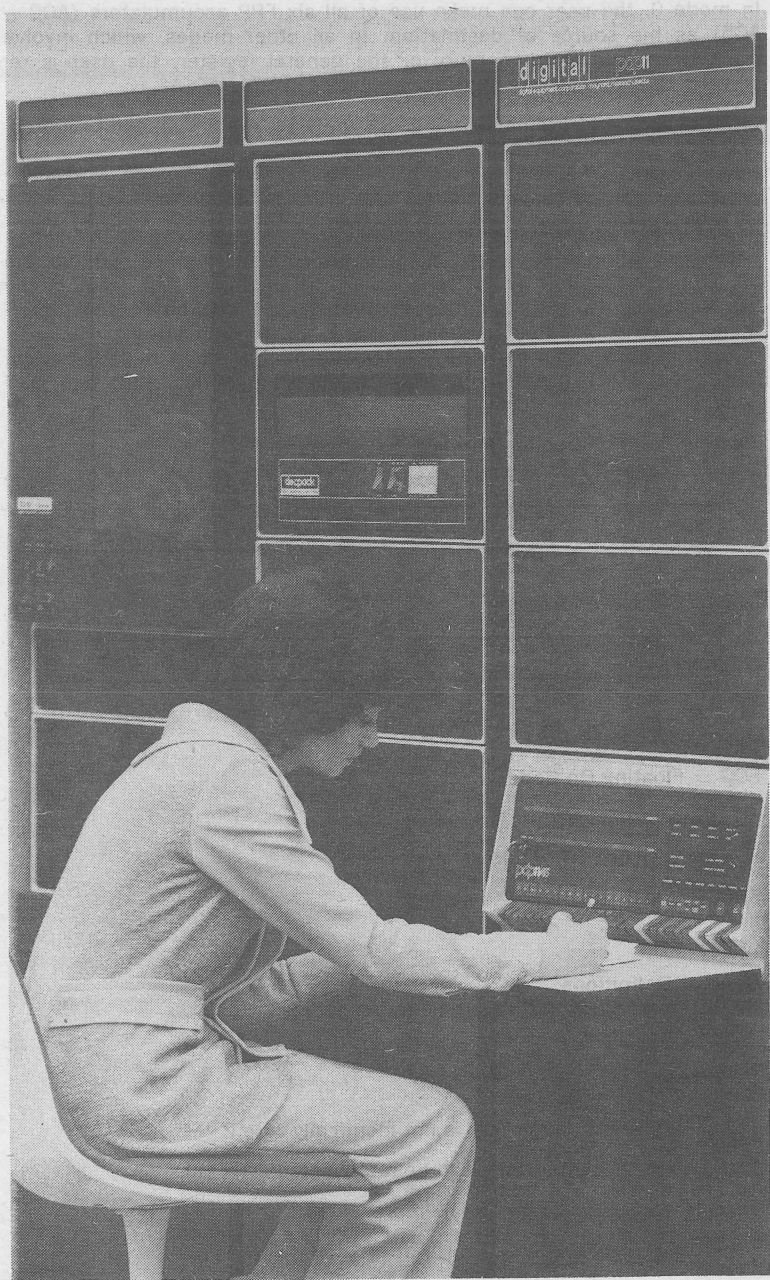
XLL = smallest number that is not identically zero  $2^{-128}$

XUL = largest number that can be represented:  $2^{127} \times \text{XL}$

JL = largest integer that can be represented:

$$2^{15}-1 \text{ If } \text{FL} = 0$$

$$2^{31}-1 \text{ If } \text{FL} = 1$$

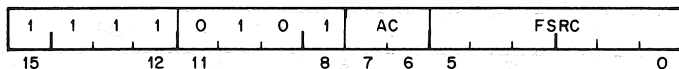




**LDF**  
**LDD**

Load Floating/Double

$172(AC + 4)FSRC$



**Operation:**  $AC \leftarrow (FSRC)$

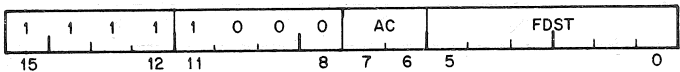
**Condition Codes:**  $FC \leftarrow 0$   
 $FV \leftarrow 0$   
 $FZ \leftarrow 1$  if  $(AC) = 0$  else  $FZ \leftarrow 0$   
 $FN \leftarrow 1$  if  $(AC) < 0$  else  $FN \leftarrow 0$

**Description:** Load Single or Double Precision Number into Accumulator

**STF**  
**STD**

Store Floating/Double

174ACFDST



**Operation:** FDST←(AC)

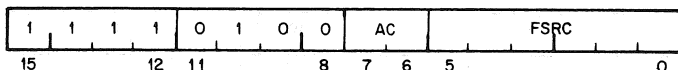
**Condition Codes:** FC←FC  
FV←FV  
FZ←FZ  
FN←FN

**Description:** Store Single or Double Precision Number from Accumulator

# **ADDF** **ADDD**

Add Floating/Double

172ACFSRC



**Operation:**  $AC \leftarrow (AC) + (FSRC)$  If  $[(AC) + (FSRC)] > XLL$  or  $FIU = 1$ , else  $AC \leftarrow 0$

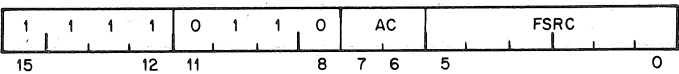
**Condition Codes:**  $FC \leftarrow 0$   
 $FV \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) > XUL$  else  $FV \leftarrow 0$   
 $FZ \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) = 0$  else  $FZ \leftarrow 0$   
 $FN \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) < 0$  else  $FN \leftarrow 0$

**Description:** Add the contents of FSRC to the contents of accumulator. In Single or Double Precision result is in accumulator unless Underflow occurs and the interrupt is not enabled; in this case AC is set to 0.

**SUBF**  
**SUBD**

Subtract Floating/Double

173ACFSRC



**Operation:**  $AC \leftarrow (AC) - (FSRC)$  If  $[(AC) - (FSRC)] - XLL$  or  $FIU = 1$  else  $AC \leftarrow 0$

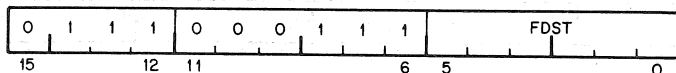
**Condition Codes:**  $FC \leftarrow 0$   
 $FV \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) > XUL$  else  $FV \leftarrow 0$   
 $FZ \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) = 0$  else  $FZ \leftarrow 0$   
 $FN \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) < 0$  else  $FN \leftarrow 0$

**Description:** Subtract the contents of FSRC from the accumulator in Single or Double Precision. Result is in accumulator unless Floating Underflow occurs and the interrupt is not enabled; in this case AC is set to 0.

**NEGF  
NEGD**

Negate Floating/Double

1707FDST



**Operation:**  $FDST \leftarrow -(FDST)$

**Condition Codes:**

$FC \leftarrow 0$

$FV \leftarrow 0$

$FZ \leftarrow 1$  If  $(FDST) = 0$  else  $FZ \leftarrow 0$

$FN \leftarrow 1$  If  $(FDST) < 0$  else  $FN \leftarrow 0$

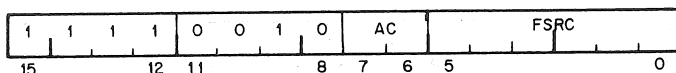
**Description:**

Negate Floating or Double Precision number, store result in same location. (FDST)

# MULF MULD

Multiply Floating/Double

171ACFSRC



**Operation:**  $AC \leftarrow (AC) * (FSRC)$  If  $[(AC) * (FSRC)] > XLL$  or  $FIU=1$ ,  
else  $AC \leftarrow 0$

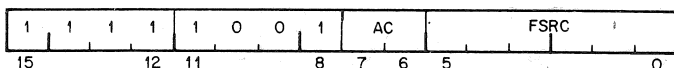
**Condition Codes:**  $FC \leftarrow 0$   
 $FV \leftarrow 1$  If  $AC > XUL$  else  $FV \leftarrow 0$   
 $FZ \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) = 0$  else  $FZ \leftarrow 0$   
 $FN \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) < 0$  else  $FN \leftarrow 0$

**Description:** Multiply the contents of the selected accumulator by the contents of FSRC. Store result in accumulator unless Floating Underflow occurs without the interrupt enabled; in this case AC is set to 0.

# DIVF DIVD

Divide Floating/Double

$174(AC + 4)FSRC$



## Operation:

If  $(FSRC) = 0$   
 $AC \leftarrow (AC)/(FSRC)$  If  $[(AC)/(FSRC)] > XLL$  or  $FIU=1$ ,  
 else  $AC \leftarrow 0$   
 If  $(FSRC) = 0$  registers, including AC, untouched

## Condition Codes:

$FC \leftarrow 0$   
 $FV \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) > XUL$  else  $FV \leftarrow 0$   
 $FZ \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) = 0$  else  $FZ \leftarrow 0$   
 $FN \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) < 0$  else  $FN \leftarrow 0$

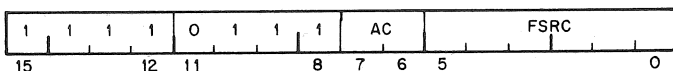
## Description:

If the contents of FSRC are not equal to zero, divide the accumulator by (FSRC). Store the result in the accumulator unless Floating Underflow occurs and the interrupt is not enabled; in this case the AC is set to 0. If attempt is made to divide by zero, accumulator is left unchanged and FEC Register is set to 4.

# CMPF CMPD

Compare Floating/Double

173(AC + 4)FSRC



**Operation:** (FSRC) - (AC)

**Condition Codes:** FC ← 0  
 FV ← 0  
 FZ ← 1 If (FSRC) - (AC) = 0 else FZ ← 0  
 FN ← 1 If (FSRC) - (AC) < 0 else FN ← 0

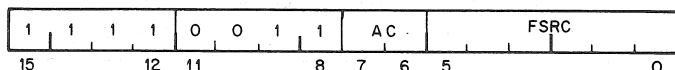
**Description:** Compare the contents of FSRC with the accumulator. Set the appropriate floating point condition codes; FSRC and the accumulator are left unchanged.



# MODF MODD

Multiply and Integerize Floating/Double

171(AC + 4)FSRC



## Operation:

$AC \vee 1 \leftarrow \text{Int}[(AC) * (FSRC)]$  If  $[(AC) * (FSRC)] > XLL$   
 or  $FIU = 1$ , else  $AC \vee 1 \leftarrow 0$   
 $AC \leftarrow (AC) * (FSRC) - (AC \vee 1)$  If  $[(AC) * (FSRC)] > XLL$   
 or  $FIU = 1$ , else  $AC \leftarrow 0$

## Condition Codes:

$FC \leftarrow 0$   
 $FV \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) > XUL$  else  $FV \leftarrow 0$   
 $FZ \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) = 0$  else  $FZ \leftarrow 0$

## Description:

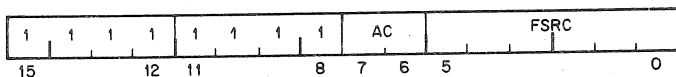
$FN \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) < 0$  else  $FN \leftarrow 0$   
 The product of (AC) and (FSRC) is produced to 48 bits in Floating Mode and 59 bits in Double Mode. The integer part  $\text{Int}[(AC) * (FSRC)]$  of the product is then found and stored in  $AC \vee 1$ .  $AC \vee 1$  is the FPP Accumulator OR'd with 1. The fractional part is then obtained and stored in AC. Thus if even-numbered Accumulators (0 or 2) are used this instruction uses two accumulators (0 and 1; 2 and 3); whereas if odd-numbered accumulators are used only one Accumulator is used (1:3) and all that is left is the fractional part of the operation. If underflow occurs and the interrupt is not enabled, AC and  $AC \vee 1$  are loaded with zero.

NOTE: Multiplication by 10 can be done with zero error allowing decimal digits to be "stripped off" with no loss in precision.

## LDCDF LDCFD

Load and convert from Double to Floating  
or from Floating to Double

$$177(AC + 4)FSRC$$



### Operation:

$AC \leftarrow C_{xy}(FSRC)$  If  $[(FSRC)] > XLL$  or  $FIU = 1$ , else  
 $AC \leftarrow 0$  Where  $C_{xy}$  specifies conversion from floating  
mode  $x$  to floating mode  $y$ , and  $x = F$  and  $y = D$  If  
 $FD = 0$ , or  $x = D$  and  $y = F$  If  $FD = 1$ .

### Condition Codes:

$FC \leftarrow 0$   
 $FV \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) > XUL$  else  $FV \leftarrow 0$   
 $FZ \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) = 0$  else  $FZ \leftarrow 0$   
 $FN \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) < 0$  else  $FN \leftarrow 0$

### Description:

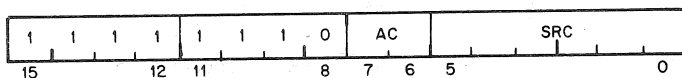
If the current mode is Floating Mode ( $FD = 0$ ) the  
source is assumed to be a double-precision number  
and is converted to single precision. If the Floating  
Truncate bit is set the number is truncated, other-  
wise the number is rounded. If the current mode is  
Double Mode ( $FD = 1$ ) the source is assumed to  
be a single-precision number and is loaded left  
justified in the AC. The lower half of the AC is  
cleared.



LDCIF  
LDCID  
LDCLF  
LDCLD

Load and Convert Integer or Long Integer to  
Floating or Double Precision

177ACSRC



**Operation:**  $AC \leftarrow C_{ix}(SRC)$  where  $C_{ix}$  specifies conversion from integer mode  $j$  to floating mode  $x$  and  $j = I$  if  $FL = 0$  or  $L$  if  $FL = 1$  and  $x = F$  if  $FD = 0$ , or  $D$  if  $FD = 1$ .

**Condition Codes:**  $FC \leftarrow 0$   
 $FV \leftarrow 0$   
 $FZ \leftarrow 1$  if  $(AC) = 0$  else  $FZ \leftarrow 0$   
 $FN \leftarrow 1$  if  $(AC) < 0$  else  $FN \leftarrow 0$

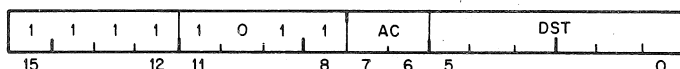
**Description:** Conversion is performed on the contents of SRC from a 2's complement Integer with precision  $j$  to a floating point number of precision  $x$ . Note that  $j$  and  $x$  are determined by the state of the mode bits  $FL$  and  $FD$ : i.e.  $J = I$  or  $L$ , and  $X = F$  or  $D$ .

When a 32 bit Integer is specified ( $L$  mode) and (SRC) has an addressing mode of 0, or immediate addressing mode is specified, the 16 bits of the source register are left justified and the remaining 16 bits loaded with zeros before conversion. In the case of LDCLF the fraction is truncated and only the highest 24 significant bits are used.

**STCFI**  
**STCFL**  
**STCDI**  
**STCDL**

Store and Convert from Floating or Double to  
Integer or Long Integer

$175(AC + 4)DST$



**Operation:**  $DST \leftarrow C_{x_i}(AC)$  If  $-JL-1 < C_{x_i}(AC) < JL$ , else  $DST \leftarrow 0$   
where  $C_{x_i}$  specifies conversion from floating mode  $x$  to integer mode  $j$  and  $j = I$  if  $FL = 0$  or  $L$  if  $FL = 1$  and  $x = F$  if  $FD = 0$ , or  $D$  if  $FD = 1$

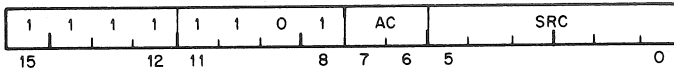
**Condition Codes:**  $C \leftarrow FC \leftarrow 0$  If  $-JL-1 < C_{x_i}(AC) < JL$  else  $FC \leftarrow 1$   
 $V \leftarrow FV \leftarrow 0$   
 $Z \leftarrow FZ \leftarrow 1$  If  $(DST) = 0$  else  $FZ \leftarrow 0$   
 $N \leftarrow FN \leftarrow 1$  If  $(DST) < 0$  else  $FN \leftarrow 0$

**Description:** Conversion is performed from a floating point representation of the data in the accumulator to an integer representation. When the conversion is to a 32 bit word (L mode) and an address mode of 0, or immediate addressing mode, is specified, only the most significant 16 bits are stored in the destination register. If the operation is out of the integer range selected by  $FL$ ,  $FC$  is set to 1 and the contents of the  $DST$  are set to 0. Numbers to be converted are always truncated (rather than rounded) before conversion. This is true even when the truncate mode bit is cleared in the Floating Point Status Register.

## LDEXP

Load Exponent

$176(AC + 4)SRC$



**Operation:**       $AC\ SIGN \leftarrow (AC\ SIGN)$   
                       $AC\ EXP \leftarrow (SRC) + 200$

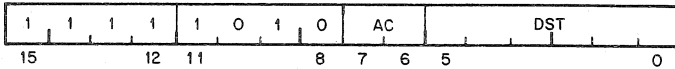
**Condition Codes:**     $FC \leftarrow 0$   
                               $FV \leftarrow 0$   
                               $FZ \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) = 0$  else  $FZ \leftarrow 0$   
                               $FN \leftarrow 1$  If  $(AC) < 0$  else  $FN \leftarrow 0$

**Description:**        Load Exponent Word from SCR into Accumulator.  
                              Convert (SRC) from 2's complement to excess  $200_8$  notation.

## STEXP

Store Exponent

175ACDST



**Operation:**  $DST \leftarrow AC \text{ EXPONENT} - 200$

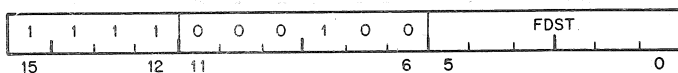
**Condition Codes:**  $C \leftarrow FC \leftarrow 0$   
 $V \leftarrow FV \leftarrow 0$   
 $Z \leftarrow FZ \leftarrow 1$  if  $(DST) = 0$  else  $FZ \leftarrow 0$   
 $N \leftarrow FN \leftarrow 1$  if  $(DST) < 0$  else  $FN \leftarrow 0$

**Description:** Store accumulator's exponent in DST, convert it from excess 200<sub>8</sub> notation to 2's complement.

# **CLRF** **CLRD**

Clear Floating/Double

1704FDST



**Operation:** FDST ← 0

**Condition Codes:** FC ← 0  
 FV ← 0  
 FZ ← 1  
 FN ← 0

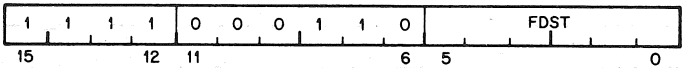
**Description:** Set FDST to 0. Set FZ condition code.



**ABSF**  
**ABSD**

Make Absolute Floating/Double

1706FDST

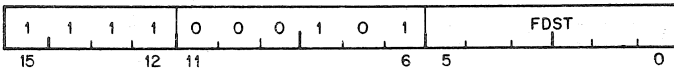


- Operation:** FDST ← -(FDST) If (FDST) < 0 else FDST ← (FDST)
- Condition Codes:** FC ← 0  
FV ← 0  
FZ ← 1 If (FDST) = 0 else FZ ← 0  
FN ← 0
- Description:** Set the contents of FDST to its absolute value.

# TSTF TSTD

Test Floating/Double

1705FDST



**Operation:** FDST  $\leftarrow$  (FDST)

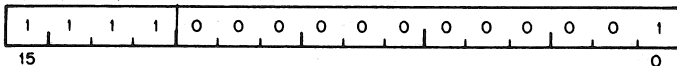
**Condition Codes:** FC  $\leftarrow$  0  
 FV  $\leftarrow$  0  
 FZ  $\leftarrow$  1 IF (FDST) = 0 else FZ  $\leftarrow$  0  
 FN  $\leftarrow$  1 IF (FDST) < 4 else FN  $\leftarrow$  0

**Description:** Set the Floating Point Processor's Condition Codes according to the contents of FDST.

## SETF

Set Floating Mode

170001



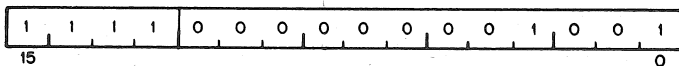
**Operation:**  $FD \leftarrow 0$

**Description:** Set the FPP in Single Precision Mode

## SETD

Set Floating Double Mode

170011



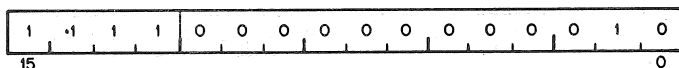
**Operation:**  $FD \leftarrow 1$

**Description:** Set the FPP in Double Precision Mode

## SETI

Set Integer Mode

170002



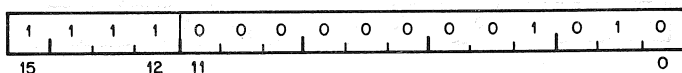
**Operation:** FL←0

**Description:** Set the FPP for Integer Data

## SETL

Set Long Integer Mode

170012



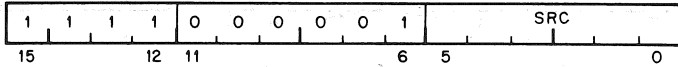
**Operation:** FL←1

**Description:** Set the FPP for Long Integer Data

## LDFPS

Load FPPs Program Status

1701SRC



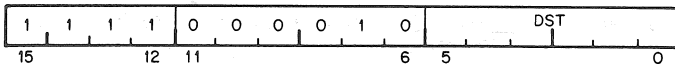
**Operation:**  $FPS \leftarrow (SRC)$

**Description:** Load FPP's Status from SRC.

## STFPS

Store FPPs Program Status

1702DST



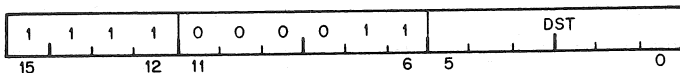
**Operation:**  $DST \leftarrow (FPS)$

**Description:** Store FPP's Status in DST

## STST

Store FPPs Status

1703DST



**Operation:**

$DST \leftarrow (FEC)$

$DST + 2 \leftarrow (FEA)$

**Description:**

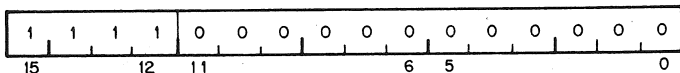
Store the FEC and then the FPP's Exception Address Pointer in DST and  $DST + 2$

**Note:** If destination mode specifies a general register or immediate addressing, only the FEC is saved.

## CFCC

Copy Floating Condition Codes

170000



**Operation:**

$C \leftarrow FC$

$V \leftarrow FV$

$Z \leftarrow FZ$

$N \leftarrow FN$

**Description:**

Copy FPP Condition Codes into the CPU's Condition Codes.

## APPENDIX A

### UNIBUS ADDRESSES

#### A.1 INTERRUPT & TRAP VECTORS

|     |                                             |
|-----|---------------------------------------------|
| 000 | (reserved)                                  |
| 004 | CPU errors                                  |
| 010 | Illegal & reserved instructions             |
| 014 | BPT, breakpoint trap                        |
| 020 | IOT, input/output trap                      |
| 024 | Power Fail                                  |
| 030 | EMT, emulator trap                          |
| 034 | TRAP instruction                            |
| 040 | System software                             |
| 044 | System software                             |
| 050 | System software                             |
| 054 | System software                             |
| 060 | Console Terminal, keyboard/reader           |
| 064 | Console Terminal, printer/punch             |
| 070 | PC11, paper tape reader                     |
| 074 | PC11, paper tape punch                      |
| 100 | KW11-L, line clock                          |
| 104 | KW11-P, programmable clock                  |
| 110 |                                             |
| 114 | Memory system errors                        |
| 120 | XY Plotter                                  |
| 124 | DR11-B DMA interface; (DA11-B)              |
| 130 | ADO1, A/D subsystem                         |
| 134 | AFC11, analog subsystem                     |
| 140 | AA11, display                               |
| 144 | AA11, light pen                             |
| 150 |                                             |
| 154 |                                             |
| 160 |                                             |
| 164 |                                             |
| 170 | User reserved                               |
| 174 | User reserved                               |
| 200 | LP11/LS11, line printer                     |
| 204 | RS04/RF11, fixed head disk                  |
| 210 | RC11, disk                                  |
| 214 | TC11, DECtape                               |
| 220 | RK11, disk                                  |
| 224 | TU16/TM11, magnetic tape                    |
| 230 | CD11/CM11/CR11, card reader                 |
| 234 | UDC11, digital control subsystem; ICS/ICR11 |
| 240 | PIRQ, Program Interrupt Request (11/45)     |

|     |                             |
|-----|-----------------------------|
| 244 | Floating Point Error        |
| 250 | Memory Management           |
| 254 | RP04/RP11 disk pack         |
| 260 | TA11, cassette              |
| 264 | RX11, floppy disk           |
| 270 | User reserved               |
| 274 | User reserved               |
| 300 | (start of floating vectors) |

## A.2 FLOATING VECTORS

There is a floating vector convention used for communications (and other) devices that interface with the PDP-11. These vector addresses are assigned in order starting at 300 and proceeding upwards to 777. The following Table shows the assigned sequence. It can be seen that the first vector address, 300, is assigned to the first DC11 in the system. If another DC11 is used, it would then be assigned vector address 310, etc. When the vector addresses have been assigned for all the DC11's (up to a maximum of 32), addresses are then assigned consecutively to each unit of the next highest-ranked device (KL11 or DP11 or DM11, etc.), then to the other devices in accordance with the priority ranking.

**Priority Ranking for Floating Vectors**  
(starting at 300 and proceeding upwards)

| Rank | Device                    | Vector Size<br>(in octal) | Max No. |
|------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------|
| 1    | DC11                      | (10) <sub>s</sub>         | 32      |
| 2    | KL11, DL11-A, DL11-B      | 10                        | 16      |
| 3    | DP11                      | 10                        | 32      |
| 4    | DM11-A                    | 10                        | 16      |
| 5    | DN11                      | 4                         | 16      |
| 6    | DM11-BB (DH11-AD or DV11) | 4                         | 16      |
| 7    | DR11-A                    | 10*                       | 32      |
| 8    | DR11-C                    | 10*                       | 32      |
| 9    | PA611 Reader              | 4*                        | 16      |
| 10   | PA611 Punch               | 4*                        | 16      |
| 11   | DT11                      | 10*                       | 8       |
| 12   | DX11                      | 10*                       | 4       |
| 13   | DL11-C, DL11-D, DL11-E    | 10                        | 31      |
| 14   | DJ11                      | 10                        | 16      |
| 15   | DH11                      | 10                        | 16      |
| 16   | GT40                      | 10                        | 1       |
| 17   | LPS11                     | 30*                       | 1       |
| 18   | DQ11                      | 10                        | 16      |
| 19   | KW11-W                    | 10                        | 1       |
| 20   | DU11                      | 10                        | 16      |
| 21   | DUP11                     | 10                        |         |
| 22   | DV11                      | 10                        |         |

\*—The first vector for the first device of this type must always be on a (10)<sub>s</sub> boundary.



### A.3 FLOATING ADDRESSES

There is a floating address convention used for communications (and other) devices interfacing with the PDP-11. These addresses are assigned in order starting at 760 010 and proceeding upwards to 763 776.

Floating addresses are assigned in the following sequence:

| Rank | Device |
|------|--------|
| 1    | DJ11   |
| 2    | DH11   |
| 3    | DQ11   |
| 4    | DU11   |

### A.4 DEVICE ADDRESSES

777 776 Processor Status word (PS)  
 777 774 Stack Limit (SL)  
 777 772 Program Interrupt Request (PIR)  
 777 770 Microprogram Break

777 766 CPU Error  
 777 764 System I/D  
 777 762 Upper Size  
 777 760 Lower Size } System Size

777 756  
 777 754  
 777 752 Hit/Miss  
 777 750 Maintenance

777 746 Control  
 777 744 Memory System Error  
 777 742 High Error Address  
 777 740 Low Error Address

777 717 User R6 (SP)  
 777 716 Supervisor R6 (SP)  
 777 715 R5  
 777 714 R4  
 777 713 } General registers, R3  
 777 712 } Set 1 R2  
 777 711 } R1  
 777 710 } R0

777 707 R7 (PC)  
 777 706 Kernel R6 (SP)  
 777 705 R5  
 777 704 R4  
 777 703 } General registers, R3  
 777 702 } Set 0 R2  
 777 701 } R1  
 777 700 } R0

|         |                                   |                               |
|---------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 777 676 | }                                 | User Data PAR , reg 0-7       |
| 777 660 |                                   |                               |
| 777 656 |                                   |                               |
| 777 640 | }                                 | User Instruction PAR, reg 0-7 |
| 777 636 |                                   |                               |
| 777 620 |                                   |                               |
| 777 616 | }                                 | User Data PDR, reg 0-7        |
| 777 600 |                                   |                               |
| 777 576 |                                   |                               |
| 777 574 | Memory Mgt regs,                  | (MMR2)                        |
| 777 572 |                                   | (MMR1)                        |
|         |                                   | (MMR0)                        |
| 777 570 | Console Switch & Display Register |                               |
| 777 566 | Console Terminal,                 | printer/punch data            |
| 777 564 |                                   | printer/punch status          |
| 777 562 |                                   | keyboard/reader data          |
| 777 560 |                                   | keyboard/reader status        |
| 777 556 | PC11/PR11,                        | punch data (PPB)              |
| 777 554 |                                   | punch status (PPS)            |
| 777 552 |                                   | reader data (PRB)             |
| 777 550 |                                   | reader status (PRS)           |
| 777 546 | KW11-L, clock status (LKS)        |                               |
| 777 516 | LP11/LS11/LV11,                   | printer data                  |
| 777 514 |                                   | printer status                |
| 777 512 |                                   |                               |
| 777 510 |                                   |                               |
| 777 506 | TA11,                             | cassette data (TADB)          |
| 777 504 |                                   | cassette status (TACS)        |
| 777 500 |                                   |                               |
| 777 476 | RF11,                             | look ahead (ADS)              |
| 777 474 |                                   | maintenance (MA)              |
| 777 472 |                                   | disk data (DBR)               |
| 777 470 |                                   | adrs ext error (DAE)          |
| 777 466 |                                   | disk address (DAR)            |
| 777 464 |                                   | current mem adrs (CMA)        |
| 777 462 |                                   | word count (WC)               |
| 777 460 |                                   | disk status (DCS)             |
| 777 456 |                                   | disk data (RCDB)              |
| 777 454 |                                   | maintenance (RCMN)            |
| 777 452 | RC11,                             | current address (RCCA)        |
| 777 450 |                                   | word count (RCWC)             |
| 777 446 |                                   | disk status (RCCS)            |
| 777 444 |                                   | error status (RCER)           |
| 777 442 |                                   | disk address (RCDA)           |
| 777 440 |                                   | look ahead (RCLA)             |

|         |                        |                            |                  |
|---------|------------------------|----------------------------|------------------|
| 777 436 |                        | #8                         |                  |
| 777 434 |                        | #7                         |                  |
| 777 432 |                        | #6                         |                  |
| 777 430 | DT11, bus switch       | #5                         |                  |
| 777 426 |                        | #4                         |                  |
| 777 424 |                        | #3                         |                  |
| 777 422 |                        | #2                         |                  |
| 777 420 |                        | #1                         |                  |
| 777 416 |                        | disk data (RKDB)           |                  |
| 777 414 |                        | maintenance                |                  |
| 777 412 |                        | disk address (RKDA)        |                  |
| 777 410 | RK11,                  | bus address (RKBA)         |                  |
| 777 406 |                        | word count (RKWC)          |                  |
| 777 404 |                        | disk status (RKCS)         |                  |
| 777 402 |                        | errorr (RKER)              |                  |
| 777 400 |                        | drive status (RKDS)        |                  |
| 777 376 | } DC14-D               |                            |                  |
| 777 360 |                        |                            |                  |
| 777 356 |                        |                            |                  |
| 777 354 |                        |                            |                  |
| 777 352 |                        |                            |                  |
| 777 350 |                        | DEctape data (TCDT)        |                  |
| 777 346 | TC11,                  | bus address (TCBA)         |                  |
| 777 344 |                        | word count (TCWC)          |                  |
| 777 342 |                        | command (TCCM)             |                  |
| 777 340 |                        | DEctape status (TCST)      |                  |
| 777 336 | } KE11-A, EAE #2       |                            |                  |
| 777 320 |                        |                            |                  |
| 777 316 |                        | arithmetic shift           |                  |
| 777 314 |                        | logical shift              |                  |
| 777 312 |                        | normalize                  |                  |
| 777 310 | KE11-A, EAE #1,        | step count/status register |                  |
| 777 306 |                        | multiply                   |                  |
| 777 304 |                        | multiplier quotient        |                  |
| 777 302 |                        | accumulator                |                  |
| 777 300 |                        | divide                     |                  |
| 777 166 |                        |                            | data (CDDDB)     |
| 777 164 | CR11/ data (CRB2) comp |                            | cur adrs (CDBA)  |
| 777 162 | CM11, data (CRB1)      | CD11,                      | col count (CDCC) |
| 777 160 | status (CRS)           |                            | status (CDST)    |
| 776 776 |                        |                            |                  |
| 776 774 |                        |                            |                  |
| 776 772 | AD01,                  | A/D data (ADDB)            |                  |
| 776 770 |                        | A/D status (ADCS)          |                  |
| 776 766 |                        | register 4 (DAC4)          |                  |
| 776 764 |                        | register 3 (DAC3)          |                  |
| 776 762 |                        | register 2 (DAC2)          |                  |
| 776 760 | AA11 #1,               | register 1 (DAC1)          |                  |
| 776 756 |                        | D/A status (CSR)           |                  |
| 776 754 |                        |                            |                  |

|         |                             |                       |
|---------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 776 752 | cont & status #3<br>(RPCS3) |                       |
| 776 750 | bus adrs ext (RPBAE)        |                       |
| 776 746 | ECC pattern (RPEC2)         |                       |
| 776 744 | ECC position (RPEC1)        |                       |
| 776 742 | error #3 (RPER3)            |                       |
| 776 740 | error #2 (RPER2)            |                       |
| 776 736 | cur cylinder (RPCC)         | silo memory (SILO)    |
| 776 734 | desired cyl (RPDC)          | cyl adrs (SUCA)       |
| 776 732 | offset (RPOF)               | maint 3 (RPM3)        |
| 776 730 | serial number (RPSN)        | maint 2 (RPM2)        |
| 776 726 | drive type (RPDT)           | maint 1 (RPM1)        |
| 776 724 | maintenance (RPMR)          | disk adrs (RPDA)      |
| 776 722 | data buffer (RPDB)          | cyl adrs (RPCA)       |
| 776 720 | look ahead (RPLA)           | RP11, bus adrs (RPBA) |
| 776 716 | attn summary (RPAS)         | word count (RPWC)     |
| 776 714 | error #1 (RPER1)            | disk status (RPCS)    |
| 776 712 | drive status (RPDS)         | error (RPER)          |
| 776 710 | cont & status #2<br>(RPCS2) | disk status (RPDS)    |
| 776 706 | sector/track adrs<br>(RPDA) |                       |
| 776 704 | UNIBUS address<br>(RPBA)    |                       |
| 776 702 | word count (RPWC)           |                       |
| 776 700 | cont & status #1<br>(RPCS1) |                       |
| 776 676 | } KL11, #16<br>DL11-A, -B,  |                       |
| 776 500 |                             | #1                    |
| 776 476 | } AA11, #5                  |                       |
| 776 400 |                             | #2                    |
| 776 276 | } DX11                      |                       |
| 776 200 |                             |                       |
| 776 176 | } DL11-C, -D, -E, #31       |                       |
| 775 610 |                             | #1                    |
| 775 576 | } DS11, #4                  |                       |
| 775 400 |                             | #1                    |
| 775 376 | } DN11, #16                 |                       |
| 775 200 |                             | #1                    |
| 775 176 | } DM11, #16                 |                       |
| 775 000 |                             | #1                    |
|         |                             | DV11, #1-4            |

|         |         |                                             |                             |
|---------|---------|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 774 776 | }       | DP11,                                       | #1                          |
| 774 400 |         |                                             | #32                         |
| 774 376 | }       | DC11,                                       | #32                         |
| 774 000 |         |                                             | #1                          |
| 773 766 | }       | BM792, BM873 ROM                            |                             |
| 773 000 |         | PDP-11/70 diagnostic bootstrap (half of it) |                             |
| 772 776 | }       | PA611 typeset punch                         |                             |
| 772 700 |         |                                             |                             |
| 772-676 | }       | PA611 typeset reader                        |                             |
| 772 600 |         |                                             |                             |
| 772 576 |         |                                             | maintenance (AFMR)          |
| 772 574 | AFC11,  |                                             | MX channel/gain (AFCG)      |
| 772 572 |         |                                             | flying cap data (AFBR)      |
| 772 570 |         |                                             | flying cap status (AFCS)    |
| 772 556 | }       | XY11 plotter                                |                             |
| 772 550 |         |                                             |                             |
| 772 546 |         |                                             |                             |
| 772 544 |         |                                             | counter                     |
| 772 542 | KW11-P, |                                             | count set                   |
| 772 540 |         |                                             | clock status                |
| 772 536 |         |                                             |                             |
| 772 534 |         |                                             |                             |
| 772 532 |         |                                             | read lines (MTRD)           |
| 772 530 |         |                                             | tape data (MTD)             |
| 772 526 | TM11,   |                                             | memory address (MTCMA)      |
| 772 524 |         |                                             | byte record counter (MTBRC) |
| 772 522 |         |                                             | command (MTC)               |
| 772 500 |         |                                             | tape status (MTS)           |
| 772 516 |         |                                             | Memory Mgt reg (MMR3)       |
| 772 476 |         |                                             | cont & status #3 (MTCS3)    |
| 772 474 |         |                                             | bus adrs ext (MTBAE)        |
| 772 472 |         |                                             | tape control (MTTC)         |
| 772 470 |         |                                             | serial number (MTSN)        |
| 772 466 |         |                                             | drive type (MTDT)           |
| 772 464 |         |                                             | maintenance (MTMR)          |
| 772 462 |         |                                             | data buffer (MTDB)          |
| 772 460 |         |                                             | check character (MTCK)      |
| 772 456 | TU16,   |                                             | attention summary (MTAS)    |
| 772 454 |         |                                             | error (MTER)                |
| 772 452 |         |                                             | drive status (MTDS)         |
| 772 450 |         |                                             | cont & status #2 (MTCS2)    |

|         |            |                                                |
|---------|------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 772 446 |            | frame count (MTFC)                             |
| 772 444 |            | UNIBUS address (MTBA)                          |
| 772 442 |            | word count (MTWC)                              |
| 772 440 |            | cont & status #1 (MTCS1)                       |
| 772 436 | }          | DR11-B #2                                      |
| 772 430 |            |                                                |
| 772 416 |            | data (DRDB)                                    |
| 772 414 | DR11-B #1, | status (DRST)                                  |
| 772 412 |            | bus address (DRBA)                             |
| 772 410 |            | word count (DRWC)                              |
| 772 376 | }          | Kernel Data PAR, reg 0-7                       |
| 772 360 |            |                                                |
| 772 356 | }          | Kernel Instruction PAR, reg 0-7                |
| 772 340 |            |                                                |
| 772 336 | }          | Kernel Data PDR, reg 0-7                       |
| 772 320 |            |                                                |
| 772 316 | }          | Kernel Instruction PDR, reg 0-7                |
| 772 300 |            |                                                |
| 772 276 | }          | Supervisor Data PAR, reg 0-7                   |
| 772 260 |            |                                                |
| 772 256 | }          | Supervisor Instruction PAR, reg 0-7            |
| 772 240 |            |                                                |
| 772 236 | }          | Supervisor Data Descriptor PDR, reg 0-7        |
| 772 220 |            |                                                |
| 772 216 | }          | Supervisor Instruction Descriptor PDR, reg 0-7 |
| 772 200 |            |                                                |
| 772 136 | }          | UNIBUS Memory Parity                           |
| 772 110 |            |                                                |
| 772 072 |            | cont & status #3 (RSCS3)                       |
| 772 070 |            | bus adrs ext (RSBAE)                           |
| 772 066 |            | drive type (RSDT)                              |
| 772 064 |            | maintenance (RSMR)                             |
| 772 062 |            | data buffer (RSDB)                             |
| 772 060 |            | look ahead (RSLA)                              |
| 772 056 |            | attention summary (RSAS)                       |
| 772 054 | RS04,      | error (RSER)                                   |

|         |         |                             |           |
|---------|---------|-----------------------------|-----------|
| 772 052 |         | drive status (RSDS)         |           |
| 772 050 |         | control & status #2 (RSCS2) |           |
| 772 046 | RS04,   | desired disk adrs (RSDA)    |           |
| 772 044 |         | UNIBUS address (RSBA)       |           |
| 772 042 |         | word count (RSWC)           |           |
| 772 040 |         | control & status #1 (RSCS1) |           |
| 772 016 | }       | GT40 #2                     |           |
| 772 010 |         |                             |           |
| 772 006 |         | Y axis                      |           |
| 772 004 |         | X axis                      |           |
| 772 002 | GT40 #1 | status                      |           |
| 772 000 |         | program counter             |           |
| 771 776 |         | status (UDCS)               |           |
| 771 774 | UDC11,  | scan (UDSR)                 | ICS/ICR11 |
| 771 772 |         |                             |           |
| 771 770 |         |                             |           |
| 771 776 | }       | UDC functional I/O modules  |           |
| 771 000 |         |                             |           |
| 770 776 | }       | KG11,                       | #8        |
| 770 700 |         |                             | #1        |
| 770 676 | }       | DM11-BB,                    | #16       |
| 770 500 |         |                             | #1        |
| 770 436 |         | DMA                         |           |
| 770 434 |         |                             |           |
| 770 432 |         |                             |           |
| 770 430 |         |                             |           |
| 770 426 |         |                             |           |
| 770 424 |         |                             |           |
| 770 422 |         | ext DAC                     |           |
| 770 420 |         | D/A YR                      |           |
| 770 416 |         | D/A XR                      |           |
| 770 414 |         | D/A SR                      |           |
| 770 412 | LPS11,  | D I/O output                |           |
| 770 410 |         | D I/O input                 |           |
| 770 406 |         | CKBR                        |           |
| 770 404 |         | CKSR                        |           |
| 770 402 |         | ADBR                        |           |
| 770 400 |         | ADSR                        |           |
| 770 366 | }       | UNIBUS Map                  |           |
| 770 200 |         |                             |           |

|         |   |                                                |  |                              |
|---------|---|------------------------------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| 767 776 | } | GT40 bootstrap                                 |  | User &<br>Special<br>Systems |
| 766 000 |   |                                                |  |                              |
| 765 776 | } | PDP-11/70 diagnostic bootstrap<br>(half of it) |  |                              |
| 765 000 |   |                                                |  |                              |
| 763 776 |   | (top of floating addresses)                    |  |                              |
| 760 010 |   | (start of floating addresses)                  |  |                              |

#### NOTE

All presently unused UNIBUS addresses are reserved by Digital.



## APPENDIX B

### INSTRUCTION TIMING

#### B.1 PDP-11/04

##### INSTRUCTION EXECUTION TIME

The execution time for an instruction depends on the instruction itself and the modes of addressing used. In the most general case, the Instruction Execution Time is the sum of a Basic Time, a Source Address Time, and a Destination Address Time.

$$\text{Instr Time} = \text{Basic Time} + \text{SRC Time} + \text{DST Time}$$

Double Operand instructions require all 3 of these Times, Single Operand instructions require a Basic Time and a DST Time, and with all other instructions the Basic Time is the Instr Time.

All Timing information is in microseconds, unless otherwise noted. Times are typical; processor timing can vary  $\pm 10\%$ .

##### BASIC TIMES

| Double Operand<br>Instruction                        | Basic Time ( $\mu$ sec) |            |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|------------|
|                                                      | MOS                     | Parity MOS |
| ADD, SUB, BIC, BIS                                   | 3.17                    | 3.33       |
| CMP, BIT                                             | 2.91                    | 3.07       |
| MOV                                                  | 2.91                    | 3.07       |
| <b>Single Operand</b>                                |                         |            |
| CLR, COM, INC, DEC, NEG, ADC, SBS                    | 2.65                    | 2.81       |
| ROR, ROL, ASR, ASL                                   | 2.91                    | 3.07       |
| TST                                                  | 2.39                    | 2.55       |
| SWAB                                                 | 2.91                    | 3.07       |
| All Branches (branch true)                           | 2.65                    | 2.81       |
| All Branches (branch false)                          | 1.87                    | 2.03       |
| <b>Jump Instructions</b>                             |                         |            |
| JMP                                                  | 0.91                    | 0.88       |
| JSR                                                  | 3.27                    | 3.27       |
| <b>Control, Trap, and Miscellaneous Instructions</b> |                         |            |
| RTS                                                  | 4.11                    | 4.43       |
| RTI, RTT                                             | 5.31                    | 5.79       |
| Set N,Z,V,C                                          | 2.39                    | 2.55       |
| Clear N,Z,V,C                                        | 2.39                    | 2.55       |
| HALT                                                 | 1.46                    | 1.62       |
| WAIT                                                 | 2.13                    | 2.29       |
| RESET                                                | 100 ms                  | 100 ms     |
| IOT, EMT, TRAP, BPT                                  | 7.95                    | 8.49       |

## ADDRESSING TIMES

| ADDRESSING FORMAT |                         |           | Time ( $\mu\text{sec}$ ) |            |            |            |
|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|------------|------------|------------|
| Mode              | Description             | Symbolic  | SRC Time*                |            | DST Time** |            |
|                   |                         |           | MOS                      | Parity MOS | MOS        | Parity MOS |
| 0                 | REGISTER                | R         | 0                        | 0          | 0          | 0          |
| 1                 | REGISTER DEFERRED       | @R or (R) | 0.94                     | 1.10       | 1.48       | 1.67       |
| 2                 | AUTO-INCREMENT          | (R)+      | 1.20                     | 1.36       | 1.76       | 1.95       |
| 3                 | AUTO-INCREMENT DEFERRED | @(R)+     | 2.66                     | 2.98       | 3.20       | 3.55       |
| 4                 | AUTO-DECREMENT          | -(R)      | 1.20                     | 1.36       | 1.76       | 1.95       |
| 5                 | AUTO-DECREMENT DEFERRED | @-(R)     | 2.66                     | 2.98       | 3.20       | 3.55       |
| 6                 | INDEX                   | X(R)      | 2.92                     | 3.24       | 3.46       | 3.81       |
| 7                 | INDEX DEFERRED          | @X(R)     | 4.38                     | 4.86       | 4.92       | 5.43       |

\* For Source time, add the following for odd byte addressing: 0.52 ( $\mu\text{sec}$ )

\*\* For Destination time, modify as follows:

- a) Add for odd byte addressing with a non-modifying instruction: 0.52 ( $\mu\text{sec}$ )
- b) Add for odd byte addressing with a modifying instruction modes 1-7: 1.04 ( $\mu\text{sec}$ )
- c) Subtract for all non-modifying instructions except Mode 0:  
MOS: 0.54      Parity MOS: 0.57 ( $\mu\text{sec}$ )
- d) Add for MOVE instructions Mode 1-7: 0.26 ( $\mu\text{sec}$ )
- e) Subtract for JMP and JSR instructions, modes 3, 5, 6, 7: 0.52 ( $\mu\text{sec}$ )

## B.2 PDP-11/05 & 11/10

### INSTRUCTION EXECUTION TIME

The execution time for an instruction depends on the instruction itself and the modes of addressing used. In the most general case, the Instruction Execution Time is the sum of a Basic Time, a Source Address Time, and a Destination Address Time.

$$\text{Instr Time} = \text{Basic Time} + \text{SRC Time} + \text{DST Time}$$

Double Operand instructions require all 3 of these Times, Single Operand instructions require a Basic Time and a DST Time, and with all other instructions the Basic Time is the Instr Time.

All Timing information is in microseconds, unless otherwise noted. Times are typical; processor timing can vary  $\pm 10\%$ .

### SOURCE & DESTINATION ADDRESS TIMES

The SRC and DST Times apply directly to Word and Even Byte instructions. Odd Byte instructions take longer, see Notes following.

| Mode | SRC Time*           | DST Time**          |
|------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 0    | 0.0 $\mu\text{sec}$ | 0.0 $\mu\text{sec}$ |
| 1    | 0.9                 | 2.4                 |
| 2    | 0.9                 | 2.4                 |
| 3    | 2.4                 | 3.4                 |
| 4    | 0.9                 | 2.4                 |
| 5    | 2.4                 | 3.4                 |
| 6    | 2.4                 | 3.4                 |
| 7    | 3.4                 | 4.7                 |

#### NOTES:

\*—For SRC Time, add 1.3  $\mu\text{sec}$  for Odd Byte addressing.

\*\*—For DST Time, and Odd Byte addressing:

1. add 1.3  $\mu\text{sec}$  for a non-modifying instruction (CMPB, BITB, TSTB).
2. add 2.4  $\mu\text{sec}$  for a modifying instruction.

## BASIC TIME

### Double Operand

| Instruction        | Basic Time                                                  |                                                  |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| ADD, SUB, BIC, BIS | 3.7 $\mu$ sec                                               | Instr Time = Basic Time +<br>SRC Time + DST Time |
| CMP, BIT           | 2.5                                                         |                                                  |
| MOV                | 3.7<br>(3.1 $\mu$ sec if Word<br>instruction<br>and mode 0) |                                                  |

### Single Operand

| Instruction                                                 | Basic Time    |                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| CLR, COM, INC, DEC,<br>NEG, ASR, ASL, ROR,<br>ROL, ADC, SBC | 3.4 $\mu$ sec | Instr Time = Basic Time +<br>DST Time |
| TST                                                         | 2.2           |                                       |
| SWAB                                                        | 4.3           |                                       |

### Branch Instructions

| Instruction    | Instr Time (branch) | Instr Time (no branch) |
|----------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| (all branches) | 2.5 $\mu$ sec       | 1.9 $\mu$ sec          |

### Jump Instructions

| Instruction | Basic Time    |                                       |
|-------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| JMP         | 1.0 $\mu$ sec | Instr Time = Basic Time +<br>DST Time |
| JSR         | 3.8           |                                       |

### Control, Trap & Misc Instructions

| Instruction         | Instr Time    |
|---------------------|---------------|
| RTS                 | 3.8           |
| RTI                 | 4.4           |
| SET N,Z,V,C         | 2.5           |
| CLR N,Z,V,C         | 2.5           |
| HALT                | 1.8           |
| WAIT                | 1.8           |
| RESET               | 100 msec      |
| IOT, EMT, TRAP, BPT | 8.2 $\mu$ sec |

## LATENCY

NPR latency is 7  $\mu$ sec, max.

### B.3 PDP-11/35 & 11/40

#### INSTRUCTION EXECUTION TIME

The execution time for an instruction depends on the instruction itself, the modes of addressing used, and the type of memory being referenced. In the most general case, the Instruction Execution Time is the sum of a Source Address Time, a Destination Address Time, and an Execute, Fetch Time.

$$\text{Instr Time} = \text{SRC Time} + \text{DST Time} + \text{EF Time}$$

Some of the instructions require only some of these times, and are so noted. All Timing information is in microseconds, unless otherwise noted. Times are typical; processor timing can vary  $\pm 10\%$ .

#### I. BASIC INSTRUCTION SET TIMING

##### Double Operand

all instructions,

except MOV:  $\text{Instr Time} = \text{SRC Time} + \text{DST Time} + \text{EF Time}$

MOV Instruction:  $\text{Instr Time} = \text{SRC Time} + \text{EF Time}$

##### Single Operand

all instr, except MFPI, MTPI:

$\text{Instr Time} = \text{DST Time} + \text{EF Time}$

MFPI, MTPI instructions:

$\text{Instr Time} = \text{EF Time}$

##### Branch, Jump, Control, Trap, & Misc

all instructions:  $\text{Instr Time} = \text{EF Time}$

#### NOTES:

1. The times specified generally apply to Word instructions. In most cases Even Byte instructions have the same times, with some Odd Byte instructions taking longer. All exceptions are noted.
2. Timing is given without regard for NRP or BR servicing. Memory types MM11-S, MF11-L, and MM11-L are assumed with direct use of the special processor MSYNA signal and with memory within the CPU mounting assembly. Use of the regular Unibus BUS MSYN signal means  $0.08 \mu\text{sec}$  must be added for each memory cycle.
3. If the Memory Management (KT11-D) option is installed, instruction execution times increase by  $0.15 \mu\text{sec}$  for each memory cycle used.

## SOURCE ADDRESS TIME

| Instruction       | Source Mode | SRC Time (A)   | Memory Cycles |
|-------------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| Double<br>Operand | 0           | 0.00 $\mu$ sec | 0             |
|                   | 1           | .78            | 1             |
|                   | 2           | .84            | 1             |
|                   | 3           | 1.74           | 2             |
|                   | 4           | .84            | 1             |
|                   | 5           | 1.74           | 2             |
|                   | 6           | 1.46           | 2             |
|                   | 7           | 2.36           | 3             |

NOTE (A): For Source Modes 1 thru 7, add 0.34  $\mu$ sec for Odd Byte instructions.

## DESTINATION ADDRESS TIME

| Instruction                                                                 | Destination Mode | DST Time (B)   | Memory Cycles |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|
| Single<br>Operand,<br>and<br>Double<br>Operand<br>(except<br>MOV, JMP, JSR) | 0                | 0.00 $\mu$ sec | 0             |
|                                                                             | 1                | .78 ( .90)     | 1             |
|                                                                             | 2                | .84 ( .90)     | 1             |
|                                                                             | 3                | 1.74 (1.80)    | 2             |
|                                                                             | 4                | .84 ( .90)     | 1             |
|                                                                             | 5                | 1.74 (1.80)    | 2             |
|                                                                             | 6                | 1.46 (1.74)    | 2             |
|                                                                             | 7                | 2.36 (2.64)    | 1             |

NOTE (B): For Destination Modes 1 thru 7, add 0.34  $\mu$ sec for Odd Byte instructions. Use higher values in parentheses ( ) for ADD, SUB, CMP, BIT, BIC, or BIS and a Source Mode of 0.

## EXECUTE, FETCH TIME

### Double Operand

| Instruction<br>(use with SRC<br>Time & DST Time) | SRC Mode 0<br>DST Mode 0 |            | SRC Mode 1 to 7<br>DST Mode 0 |            | SRC Mode 0 to 7<br>DST Mode 1 to 7 |            |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------|-------------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|------------|
|                                                  | EF<br>Time               | Mem<br>Cyc | EF<br>Time                    | Mem<br>Cyc | EF<br>Time (C)                     | Mem<br>Cyc |
| ADD, CMP, }<br>BIT, BIC, BIS }                   | 0.99 $\mu$ s             | 1          | 1.60 $\mu$ s                  | 1          | 1.76 $\mu$ s                       | 2          |
| SUB                                              | .99                      | 1          | 1.60                          | 1          | 1.90                               | 2          |
| XOR                                              | .99                      | 1          | —                             | —          | 1.76                               | 2          |

NOTE (C): For Destination Modes 1 thru 7, add 0.48  $\mu$ sec for Odd Byte instructions.

| Instruction                | DST Mode | SRC Mode | EF Time (Word Instr) | EF Time (Odd or Even Byte) | Memory Cycles |
|----------------------------|----------|----------|----------------------|----------------------------|---------------|
| MOV<br>(use with SRC Time) | 0        | 0        | 0.90 $\mu$ sec       | 1.80 $\mu$ sec             | 0             |
|                            | 0        | 1 to 7   | 1.46                 | 1.80                       | 0             |
|                            | 1        | 0 to 7   | 2.42                 | 2.56                       | 2             |
|                            | 2        | 0 to 7   | 2.42                 | 2.56                       | 2             |
|                            | 3        | 0 to 7   | 3.18                 | 3.32                       | 3             |
|                            | 4        | 0 to 7   | 2.42                 | 2.56                       | 2             |
|                            | 5        | 0 to 7   | 3.18                 | 3.32                       | 3             |
|                            | 6        | 0        | 2.84                 | 2.98                       | 3             |
|                            | 6        | 1 to 7   | 3.18                 | 3.32                       | 3             |
|                            | 7        | 0        | 3.68                 | 3.82                       | 4             |
|                            | 7        | 1 to 7   | 4.02                 | 4.16                       | 4             |

### Single Operand

| Instruction<br>(use with DST Time)                           | Destination Mode 0 |            | Destination Mode 1 to 7 |            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------|-------------------------|------------|
|                                                              | EF Time            | Mem Cycles | EF Time (D)             | Mem Cycles |
| CLR, COM, NEG, INC,<br>DEC, ADC, SBC, TST,<br>ROL, ASL, SWAB | 0.99 $\mu$ s       | 1          | 1.77 $\mu$ s            | 2          |
| ROR, ASR                                                     | 1.25 (E)           | 1          | 2.06                    | 2          |
| SXT                                                          | .90                | 1          | 1.77                    | 2          |

NOTE (D): For Destination Modes 1 thru 7, add 0.48  $\mu$ sec for Odd Byte instructions.

NOTE (E): For RORB and ASRB, add 0.14  $\mu$ sec for Even or Odd Byte instructions.

| Instruction | Instr Time   | Mem Cycles | Note                                                                           |
|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MFPI        | 3.74 $\mu$ s | 2          | These two instructions are implemented only if Memory Management is installed. |
| MTPI        | 3.68         | 2          |                                                                                |

### Branch Instructions

| Instruction                                                                                   | Instr Time (Branch) | Instr Time (No Branch) | Memory Cycles |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| BR, BNE, BEQ, BPL, BMI,<br>BVC, BVS, BCC, BCS,<br>BGE, BLT, BGT, BLE,<br>BHI, BLOS, BHIS, BLO | 1.76 $\mu$ sec      | 1.40 $\mu$ sec         | 1             |
| SOB                                                                                           | 2.36                | 2.04                   | 1             |

## Jump Instructions

| Instruction | Destination Mode | Instr Time     | Memory Cycles |
|-------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|
| JMP         | 1                | 1.80 $\mu$ sec | 1             |
|             | 2                | 2.10           | 1             |
|             | 3                | 2.30           | 2             |
|             | 4                | 1.90           | 1             |
|             | 5                | 2.30           | 2             |
|             | 6                | 2.36           | 2             |
|             | 7                | 2.92           | 3             |
| JSR         | 1                | 2.94           | 2             |
|             | 2                | 3.24           | 2             |
|             | 3                | 3.44           | 3             |
|             | 4                | 3.04           | 2             |
|             | 5                | 3.44           | 3             |
|             | 6                | 3.50           | 3             |
|             | 7                | 4.06           | 4             |

## Control, Trap, & Misc Instructions

| Instruction           | Instr Time     | Mem Cyc | Notes                                                |
|-----------------------|----------------|---------|------------------------------------------------------|
| RTS                   | 2.42 $\mu$ sec | 2       |                                                      |
| MARK                  | 2.56           | 2       |                                                      |
| RTI, RTT              | 2.92           | 3       |                                                      |
| SET N,Z,V,C           | 1.72           | 1       |                                                      |
| CLR N,Z,V,C           | 2.02           | 1       |                                                      |
| HALT                  | 2.42           | 1       | Console loop for a switch setting is 0.44 $\mu$ sec. |
| WAIT                  | 2.24           | 1       | WAIT loop for a BR is 1.12 $\mu$ sec.                |
| RESET                 | 80 msec        | 1       |                                                      |
| IOT, EMT<br>TRAP, BPT | 5.80 $\mu$ sec | 5       |                                                      |

## LATENCY

Interrupts (BR requests) are acknowledged at the end of the current instruction. For a typical instruction, with an instruction execution time of 4  $\mu$ sec, the average time to request acknowledgement would be 2  $\mu$ sec.

Interrupt service time, which is the time from BR acknowledgement to the first subroutine instruction, is 5.42  $\mu$ sec, max.

NPR (DMA) latency, which is the time from request to bus mastership for the first NPR device, is 3.50  $\mu$ sec, max.



## II. EIS, KE11-E, INSTRUCTION TIMING

$$\text{Instr Time} = \text{SRC Time} + \text{EF Time}$$

| Source Mode | SRC Time             |
|-------------|----------------------|
| 0           | 0.28 $\mu\text{sec}$ |
| 1           | .78                  |
| 2           | .98                  |
| 3           | 1.74                 |
| 4           | .98                  |
| 5           | 1.74                 |
| 6           | 1.74                 |
| 7           | 2.64                 |

| Instruction     | EF Time              | Notes                               |
|-----------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| MUL             | 8.88 $\mu\text{sec}$ |                                     |
| DIV             | 11.30                |                                     |
| ASH (right)     | 2.58                 | Add 0.30 $\mu\text{sec}$ per shift. |
| ASH (left)      | 2.78                 | Add 0.30 $\mu\text{sec}$ per shift. |
| ASHC (no shift) | 2.78                 |                                     |
| ASHC (shift)    | 3.26                 | Add 0.30 $\mu\text{sec}$ per shift. |

### LATENCY

Interrupts are acknowledged at the end of the current instruction. Interrupt service time is 5.42  $\mu\text{sec}$ , max. NPR latency is 3.50  $\mu\text{sec}$ , max.

## III. FLOATING POINT, KE11-F, INSTRUCTION TIMING

$$\text{Instr Time} = \text{Basic Time} + \text{Shift Time for binary pts} + \text{Shift Time for norm}$$

| Instr | Basic Time            | Time per shift to<br>line up binary points<br>(0 to 23 shifts) | Time per shift<br>for normalization<br>(0 to 25 shifts) |
|-------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| FADD  | 18.78 $\mu\text{sec}$ | 0.30 $\mu\text{sec}$                                           | 0.34 $\mu\text{sec}$                                    |
| FSUB  | 19.08                 | .30                                                            | .34                                                     |
| FMUL  | 29.00                 | —                                                              | .34                                                     |
| FDIV  | 46.72                 | —                                                              | .34                                                     |

Basic instruction times shown for FADD and FSUB assume exponents are equal or differ by one.

### LATENCY

If an interrupt request of higher priority than the operating program occurs during a Floating Point instruction, the current instruction will be aborted unless it is near completion. The maximum time from interrupt request to acknowledgement during Floating Point instruction execution is 20.08  $\mu\text{sec}$ . Interrupt service time is 5.42  $\mu\text{sec}$ , max. NPR latency is 3.50  $\mu\text{sec}$ , max.

## B.4 PDP-11/45

### INSTRUCTION EXECUTION TIME

The execution time for an instruction depends on the instruction itself, the modes of addressing used, and the type of memory being referenced. In the most general case, the Instruction Execution Time is the sum of a Source Address Time, a Destination Address Time, and an Execute, Fetch Time.

$$\text{Instr Time} = \text{SRC Time} + \text{DST Time} + \text{EF Time}$$

Some of the instructions require only some of these times, and are so noted. Times are typical; processor timing, with core memory, may vary +15% to -10%.

#### BASIC INSTRUCTION SET TIMING

##### Double Operand

all instructions,

$$\text{except MOV: Instr Time} = \text{SRC Time} + \text{DST Time} + \text{EF Time}$$

$$\text{MOV Instruction: Instr Time} = \text{SRC Time} + \text{EF Time}$$

##### Single Operand

$$\text{all instructions: Instr Time} = \text{DST Time} + \text{EF Time} \quad \text{or} \\ \text{Instr Time} = \text{SRC Time} + \text{EF Time}$$

##### Branch, Jump, Control, Trap & Misc

$$\text{all instructions: Instr Time} = \text{EF Time}$$

#### USING THE CHART TIMES

To compute a particular instruction time, first find the instruction "EF" Time. Select the proper EF Time for the SRC and DST modes. Observe all "NOTES" to the EF Time by adding the correct amount to basic EF number.

Next, note whether the particular instruction requires the inclusion of SRC and DST Times, if so, add the appropriate amounts to correct EF number.

#### NOTES

1. The times specified generally apply to Word instructions. In most cases Even Byte instructions have the same times, with some Odd Byte instructions taking longer. All exceptions are noted.
2. Timing is given without regard for NRP or BR servicing. Core memory is assumed to be located within the CPU mounting assembly.
3. MOS memory cycle time is assumed to range -10 to +15  $\mu\text{sec}$  from 495  $\mu\text{sec}$ . Worst case of 510  $\mu\text{sec}$  is used in these calculations.
4. If the Memory Management option is installed and operating, instruction execution times increase by .09  $\mu\text{sec}$  for each memory cycle used.
5. All times are in microseconds.

## SOURCE ADDRESS TIME

| Instruction    | Source Mode | SRC Time |      |         |          | Memory Cycles |
|----------------|-------------|----------|------|---------|----------|---------------|
|                |             | Bipolar  | MOS  | 8K Core | 16K Core |               |
| Double Operand | 0           | .00      | .00  | .00     | .00      | 0             |
|                | 1           | .30      | .51  | .83     | .89      | 1             |
|                | 2           | .30      | .51  | .83     | .89      | 1             |
|                | 3           | .75      | 1.17 | 1.81    | 1.92     | 2             |
|                | 4           | .45      | .66  | .98     | 1.04     | 1             |
|                | 5           | .90      | 1.32 | 1.96    | 2.07     | 2             |
|                | 6           | .60      | 1.02 | 1.73    | 1.86     | 2             |
|                | 7           | 1.05     | 1.68 | 2.71    | 2.89     | 3             |

## DESTINATION ADDRESS TIME

| Instruction                                                   | DST Mode | DST Time (A) |      |         |          | Memory Cycles |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------|--------------|------|---------|----------|---------------|
|                                                               |          | Bipolar      | MOS  | 8K Core | 16K Core |               |
| Single Operand and Double Operand (except MOV, MTP, JMP, JSR) | 0        | .00          | .00  | .00     | .00      | 0             |
|                                                               | 1        | .30          | .51  | .83(B)  | .86(B)   | 1             |
|                                                               | 2        | .30          | .51  | .83(B)  | .86(B)   | 1             |
|                                                               | 3        | .75          | 1.17 | 1.81(B) | 1.92(B)  | 2             |
|                                                               | 4        | .45          | .66  | .98     | 1.04     | 1             |
|                                                               | 5        | .90          | 1.32 | 1.96    | 2.07     | 2             |
|                                                               | 6        | .60          | 1.02 | 1.73(B) | 1.86(B)  | 2             |
|                                                               | 7        | 1.05         | 1.68 | 2.71(B) | 2.89(B)  | 3             |

NOTE (A): Add .15  $\mu$ sec for odd byte instructions, except DST Mode 0.

NOTE (B): For 8K core, add .07  $\mu$ sec if SRC Mode = 1-7; for 16K core, add .085  $\mu$ sec if SRC Mode = 1-7.

# **EXECUTE, FETCH TIME** Double Operand

| Instruction                            | SRC Mode 0<br>DST Mode 0 |            |            |                          |            |            | SRC Mode 1-7<br>DST Mode 0 |            |            |                          |             |             | SRC Mode 0 to 7<br>DST Mode 1 to 7 |     |      |                          |      |      | Mem<br>Cyc |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------|------------|--------------------------|------------|------------|----------------------------|------------|------------|--------------------------|-------------|-------------|------------------------------------|-----|------|--------------------------|------|------|------------|
|                                        | EF Time                  |            |            | 8K 16K<br>Core Core Core |            |            | ET Time                    |            |            | 8K 16K<br>Core Core Core |             |             | EF Time                            |     |      | 8K 16K<br>Core Core Core |      |      |            |
| (Use with<br>SRC Time<br>and DST Time) | Bipolar                  | MOS        | Core       | Bipolar                  | MOS        | Core       | Bipolar                    | MOS        | Core       | Bipolar                  | MOS         | Core        | Bipolar                            | MOS | Core | Bipolar                  | MOS  | Core | Mem<br>Cyc |
| ADD, SUB,<br>BIC, BIS                  | .30<br>(D)               | .51<br>(D) | .90<br>(C) | .97<br>(C)               | .97<br>(C) | .97<br>(C) | 1                          | .45<br>(D) | .66<br>(D) | 1.05<br>(E)              | 1.12<br>(E) | 1.12<br>(E) | 2                                  | .75 | 1.17 | 1.82                     | 1.81 | 2    |            |
| CMP, BIT                               | .30<br>(D)               | .51<br>(D) | .90<br>(C) | .97<br>(C)               | .97<br>(C) | .97<br>(C) | 1                          | .45<br>(D) | .66<br>(D) | 1.05<br>(E)              | 1.12<br>(E) | 1.12<br>(E) | 1                                  | .45 | .66  | 1.13                     | 1.19 | 1    |            |
| XOR                                    | .30<br>(D)               | .51<br>(D) | .90<br>(C) | .97<br>(C)               | .97<br>(C) | .97<br>(C) | 1                          | —          | —          | —                        | —           | —           | —                                  | .75 | 1.17 | 1.82                     | 1.81 | 2    |            |

NOTE (C): For 8K, add .23  $\mu$ sec if DST is R7; for 16 K, add .22  $\mu$ sec if DST is R7.

NOTE (D): Add .3  $\mu$ sec if DST is R7.

NOTE (E): For 8K, add .23  $\mu$ sec if DST is R7, add .08  $\mu$ sec if DST is odd byte and not R7; for 16K, add .65  $\mu$ sec if DST is odd byte not R7.

Double Operand (Cont.)

| Instruction<br>(Use with<br>SRC Time) | DST<br>Mode | DST<br>Register | EF Time<br>(SRC MODE = 0) |      |            |             |  |  | EF Time<br>(SRC MODE = 1-7) |      |            |             |  |  | Memory<br>Cycles |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------|---------------------------|------|------------|-------------|--|--|-----------------------------|------|------------|-------------|--|--|------------------|
|                                       |             |                 | Bipolar                   | MOS  | 8K<br>Core | 16K<br>Core |  |  | Bipolar                     | MOS  | 8K<br>Core | 16K<br>Core |  |  |                  |
| MOV                                   | 0           | 0-6             | .30                       | .51  | .9         | .97         |  |  | .45                         | .66  | 1.05       | 1.12        |  |  | 1                |
|                                       | 0           | 7               | .60                       | .81  | 1.13       | 1.19        |  |  | .75                         | .96  | 1.28       | 1.34        |  |  | 1                |
|                                       | 1           | 0-7             | .75                       | 1.17 | 2.00       | 2.13        |  |  | .75                         | 1.17 | 1.95       | 2.09        |  |  | 2                |
|                                       | 2           | 0-7             | .75                       | 1.17 | 2.00       | 2.13        |  |  | .75                         | 1.17 | 1.95       | 2.09        |  |  | 2                |
|                                       | 3           | 0-7             | 1.20                      | 1.83 | 2.98       | 3.16        |  |  | 1.20                        | 1.83 | 3.05       | 3.25        |  |  | 3                |
|                                       | 4           | 0-7             | .90                       | 1.32 | 2.15       | 2.28        |  |  | .90                         | 1.32 | 2.03       | 2.16        |  |  | 2                |
|                                       | 5           | 0-7             | 1.35                      | 1.98 | 3.13       | 3.31        |  |  | 1.35                        | 1.98 | 3.13       | 3.31        |  |  | 3                |
|                                       | 6           | 0-7             | 1.05                      | 1.68 | 2.90       | 3.09        |  |  | 1.20                        | 1.83 | 3.05       | 3.25        |  |  | 3                |
|                                       | 7           | 0-7             | 1.50                      | 2.34 | 3.88       | 4.13        |  |  | 1.65                        | 2.49 | 4.03       | 4.28        |  |  | 4                |

# Single Operand

| Instruction<br>(Use with DST Time)                     | DST MODE = 0 |            |             |             | Memory<br>Cycles | DST MODE 1 to 7 |             |             |             | Memory<br>Cycles |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------|------------|-------------|-------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|------------------|
|                                                        | Bipolar      | MOS        | 8K<br>Core  | 16K<br>Core |                  | Bipolar         | MOS         | 8K<br>Core  | 16K<br>Core |                  |
| CLR COM, INC, DEC, ADC,<br>SBC, ROL, ASL, SWAB,<br>SXT | .30<br>(J)   | .51<br>(J) | .90<br>(G)  | .97<br>(G)  | 1                | .75             | 1.17        | 1.82        | 1.81        | 2                |
| NEG                                                    | .75          | .96        | 1.28        | 1.34        | 1                | 1.05            | 1.47        | 2.10<br>(F) | 1.99<br>(F) | 2                |
| TST                                                    | .30<br>(J)   | .51<br>(J) | .90<br>(G)  | .97<br>(G)  | 1                | .45             | .66         | 1.13        | 1.19        | 1                |
| ROR, ASR                                               | .30<br>(J)   | .51<br>(J) | .90<br>(G)  | .97<br>(G)  | 1                | .75             | 1.17        | 1.82<br>(H) | 1.81<br>(H) | 2                |
| ASH, ASHC                                              | .75<br>(I)   | .96<br>(I) | 1.28<br>(I) | 1.34<br>(I) | 1                | .90<br>(I)      | 1.11<br>(I) | 1.43<br>(I) | 1.49<br>(I) | 1                |

NOTE (F): Add .12  $\mu$ sec if odd byte.

NOTE (G): For 8K, add .23  $\mu$ sec if DST is R7; for 16K, add .22  $\mu$ sec if DST is R7.

NOTE (H): Add .15  $\mu$ sec if odd byte.

NOTE (I): Add .15  $\mu$ sec per shift.

NOTE (J): Add .30  $\mu$ sec if DST is R7.

### Single Operand (Cont.)

| Instruction<br>(Use with SRC Times) | Bipolar | MOS  | 8K<br>Core | 16K<br>Core | Memory<br>Cycles |
|-------------------------------------|---------|------|------------|-------------|------------------|
| MUL                                 | 3.30    | 3.51 | 3.83       | 3.89        | 1                |
| DIV                                 |         |      |            |             |                  |
| by zero                             | .90     | 1.11 | 1.43       | 1.49        | 1                |
| shortest                            | 7.05    | 7.26 | 7.58       | 7.64        | 1                |
| longest                             | 8.55    | 8.76 | 9.08       | 9.14        | 1                |

| Instruction | Bipolar | MOS  | 8K<br>Core | 16K<br>Core | Memory<br>Cycles |                             |
|-------------|---------|------|------------|-------------|------------------|-----------------------------|
| MFPI        | 1.05    | 1.47 | 2.18       | 2.31        | 2                | use<br>with<br>SRC<br>times |
| MFPD        | 1.05    | 1.47 | 2.18       | 2.31        | 2                |                             |

| Instruction | DST<br>Mode | Instruction Time |      |            |             | Memory<br>Cycles |
|-------------|-------------|------------------|------|------------|-------------|------------------|
|             |             | Bipolar          | MOS  | 8K<br>Core | 16K<br>Core |                  |
| MTPI        | 0           | .90              | 1.32 | 2.03       | 2.16        | 2                |
| MTPD        | 1           | 1.20             | 1.83 | 2.93       | 3.13        | 3                |
|             | 2           | 1.20             | 1.83 | 2.93       | 3.13        | 3                |
|             | 3           | 1.65             | 2.49 | 4.03       | 4.28        | 4                |
|             | 4           | 1.35             | 1.98 | 3.01       | 3.19        | 3                |
|             | 5           | 1.80             | 2.64 | 4.11       | 4.35        | 4                |
|             | 6           | 1.65             | 2.49 | 4.03       | 4.28        | 4                |
|             | 7           | 2.10             | 3.15 | 5.01       | 5.32        | 5                |

### Branch Instructions

| Instruction                                                                                        | Instr Time<br>(Branch) |     |            |             | Instr Time<br>(No Branch) |      |            |             | Memory<br>Cycles |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|-----|------------|-------------|---------------------------|------|------------|-------------|------------------|
|                                                                                                    | Bipolar                | MOS | 8K<br>Core | 16K<br>Core | Bipolar                   | MOS  | 8K<br>Core | 16K<br>Core |                  |
| BR, BNE, BEQ,<br>BPL, BMI, BVC,<br>BVS, BCC, BCS,<br>BGE, BLT, BGT,<br>BLE, BHI, BLOS,<br>BHS, BLO | .60                    | .98 | 1.13       | 1.18        | .30                       | .49  | .90        | .98         | 1                |
| SOB                                                                                                | .60                    | .98 | 1.13       | 1.18        | .75                       | 1.65 | 1.28       | 1.32        |                  |

## Jump Instructions

| Instruction | DST Mode | Instr Time |      |         |          | Memory Cycles |
|-------------|----------|------------|------|---------|----------|---------------|
|             |          | Bipolar    | MOS  | 8K Core | 16K Core |               |
| JMP         | 1        | .90        | 1.11 | 1.43    | 1.49     | 1             |
|             | 2        | .90        | 1.11 | 1.43    | 1.49     | 1             |
|             | 3        | 1.20       | 1.62 | 2.26    | 2.37     | 2             |
|             | 4        | .90        | 1.11 | 1.43    | 1.49     | 1             |
|             | 5        | 1.35       | 1.77 | 2.41    | 2.52     | 2             |
|             | 6        | 1.05       | 1.47 | 2.18    | 2.31     | 2             |
|             | 7        | 1.50       | 2.13 | 3.16    | 3.34     | 3             |
| JSR         | 1        | 1.50       | 1.92 | 2.63    | 2.76     | 2             |
|             | 2        | 1.50       | 1.92 | 2.63    | 2.76     | 2             |
|             | 3        | 1.80       | 2.43 | 3.46    | 3.64     | 3             |
|             | 4        | 1.50       | 1.92 | 2.63    | 2.76     | 2             |
|             | 5        | 1.95       | 2.58 | 3.61    | 3.79     | 3             |
|             | 6        | 1.65       | 2.28 | 3.38    | 3.58     | 3             |
|             | 7        | 2.10       | 2.94 | 4.36    | 4.61     | 4             |

## Control, Trap & Miscellaneous Instructions

| Instruction                               | Instr Time |      |         |          | Memory Cycles |
|-------------------------------------------|------------|------|---------|----------|---------------|
|                                           | Bipolar    | MOS  | 8K Core | 16K Core |               |
| RTS                                       | 1.05       | 1.47 | 2.11    | 2.22     | 2             |
| MARK                                      | .90        | 1.32 | 2.03    | 2.16     | 2             |
| RTI, RTT                                  | 1.50       | 2.13 | 3.16    | 3.34     | 3             |
| SET N, Z, V, C                            |            |      |         |          |               |
| CLR, N, Z, V, C                           | .60        | .80  | 1.13    | 1.28     | 1             |
| HALT                                      | 1.05       | 1.26 | 1.58    | 1.64     | 0             |
| WAIT                                      | .45        | .45  | .45     | .45      | 0             |
| WAIT Loop<br>for a BR is<br>.3 $\mu$ sec. |            |      |         |          |               |
| RESET                                     | 10ms       | 10ms | 10ms    | 10ms     | 1             |
| IOT, EMT,<br>TRAP, BRT                    | 2.40       | 3.45 | 5.08    | 5.27     | 5             |
| SPL                                       | .60        | .81  | 1.13    | 1.19     | 1             |
| INTERRUPT<br>First Device                 | 2.25       | 3.72 | 4.95    | 5.07     | 4             |



## LATENCY

Interrupts (BR requests) are acknowledged at the end of the current instruction. For a typical instruction execution time of 3  $\mu$ sec, the average time to request acknowledgement would be one-half this or 1.5  $\mu$ sec. The worst case (longest) instruction time (Negative Divide with SRC Mode 7) and hence, the longest request acknowledgement would be 12.62  $\mu$ sec max with 16K core (11.79  $\mu$ sec with 8K core, 11.22  $\mu$ sec with MOS and 9.00  $\mu$ sec with Bipolar).

The Interrupt service time, which is the time from BR request acknowledgement to the fetch of the first subroutine instruction, is 5.44  $\mu$ sec max with 16K core, 4.95  $\mu$ sec with 8K core, 3.13  $\mu$ sec with MOS and 2.25  $\mu$ sec with Bipolar.

Hence, the total worst case time from BR request to begin the fetch of the first service routine instruction is:

|                                | Bipolar | MOS   | 8K Core | 16K Core |
|--------------------------------|---------|-------|---------|----------|
| Normal                         | 11.25   | 14.15 | 16.74   | 18.41    |
| Memory Management<br>Operating | 11.70   | 14.60 | 17.19   | 18.96    |

The total average time for BR request to begin the fetch of the first service routine instruction is:

|                                | Bipolar | MOS  | 8K Core | 16K Core |
|--------------------------------|---------|------|---------|----------|
| Normal                         | 3.95    | 5.33 | 8.45    | 9.30     |
| Memory Management<br>Operating | 4.40    | 5.78 | 8.90    | 9.75     |

NPR Latency is 3.5  $\mu$ sec worst case.

## FLOATING POINT INSTRUCTION TIMING

Floating point times are calculated in a similar manner to the CPU Instruction times. The times involved are preexecution Interaction time, source or destination time, execution time, CPU displacement time, and the time taken to fetch the next Instruction.

With the floating point Instructions the CPU and the FPP operate in parallel and hence, the Instruction time includes a CPU time and a parallel FPP time. These times do not coincide, each unit is free to continue at a different time with its next operation.

Instruction Time (CPU) = pre-interaction + source + disengage + fetch of the next instruction.

Instruction Time (FPP) = pre-interaction + source + execution.

Pre-execution Interaction time: This involves the passing of information between the CPU and the FPP. The total time is 600 ns. The floating point unit interacts only during the last 150 ns.

Therefore, the CPU becomes active at the time 0, and remains so until time 600 ns, while the FPP becomes active at time 450 and remains active until the time 600 ns. The FPP could have been active from a previous task during the initial 450 ns.

### Source or Destination Times

These times are the same whether the calculation is for source or destination. The times given are for the address calculation. To this must be added memory access time to actually fetch the operands:

Integer—1 word; Long integer and Floating—2 words;

Double Precision—4 words

Therefore: SOURCE/DST = Calculation Time + MEMORY ACCESS TIME.

### Calculation Time

|                    | 30 ns Bipolar<br>(MS11-C) | 495 ns MOS<br>(MS11-B) | 900 ns Core<br>(MM11-L) | 980 ns Core<br>(MM11-U) |
|--------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Reg mode 0         | 1120                      | 1120                   | 1120                    | 1120                    |
| Floating<br>mode 0 | 1120                      | 1120                   | 1120                    | 1120                    |
| 1                  | 1260                      | 1260                   | 1260                    | 1260                    |
| 2                  | 1260                      | 1260                   | 1260                    | 1260                    |
| 3                  | 1650                      | 1800                   | 2140                    | 2200                    |
| 4                  | 1260                      | 1260                   | 1260                    | 1260                    |
| 5                  | 1800                      | 1960                   | 2310                    | 2370                    |
| 6                  | 1650                      | 1800                   | 2140                    | 2200                    |
| 7                  | 2080                      | 2400                   | 3180                    | 3350                    |

MEMORY ACCESS TIME: to be added to all modes except 0.

ADD: 1820 ns for 16K core OR

ADD: 1670 ns for 8K core OR

ADD: 1150 ns for MOS OR

ADD: 990 ns for BIPOLAR

for every memory Access required to fetch the data.

## Floating Point Execution

| Floating Point Instructions                          |                                                |           |      |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------|------|
| Mnemonic                                             | Instruction                                    | Time (μs) |      |
| Floating AC—Floating Source Group: OPR FSRC, AC      |                                                |           |      |
|                                                      |                                                | MIN       | MAX  |
| LDF                                                  | Load floating                                  | 1.5       | 1.5  |
| LDD                                                  | Load floating double                           | 1.7       | 1.7  |
| ADDF                                                 | Add floating                                   | 2.4       | 5.5  |
| ADDD                                                 | Add floating double                            | 2.6       | 7.9  |
| SUBF                                                 | Subtract floating                              | 2.4       | 5.5  |
| SUBD                                                 | Subtract floating double                       | 2.6       | 7.9  |
| MULF                                                 | Multiply floating                              | 4.7       | 7.1  |
| MULD                                                 | Multiply floating double                       | 6.6       | 12.8 |
| DIVF                                                 | Divide floating                                | 5.4       | 8.4  |
| DIVD                                                 | Divide Floating double                         | 7.5       | 13.8 |
| MODF                                                 | Multiply and Integerize floating               | 5.3       | 7.9  |
| MODD                                                 | Multiply and Integerize floating double        | 7.8       | 20.2 |
| LDCDF                                                | Load and convert from double to floating       | 1.7       | 2.4  |
| LDCFD                                                | Load and convert from floating to double       | 1.7       | 2.4  |
| STF                                                  | Store floating                                 | .88       | .88  |
| STD                                                  | Store floating double                          | .88       | .88  |
| Floating AC—Floating Destination Group: OPR AC, FDST |                                                |           |      |
| CMPF                                                 | Compare floating                               | 2.6       | 3.2  |
| CMPD                                                 | Compare double                                 | 2.8       | 3.5  |
| STCFD                                                | Store and convert from floating to double      | 1.7       |      |
| STCDF                                                | Store and convert from double to floating      | 1.7       | 3.0  |
| Floating AC—Source Group: OPR SRC, AC                |                                                |           |      |
| LDCIF                                                | Load and convert from integer to floating      | 3.6       | 4.6  |
| LDCID                                                | Load and convert from integer to double        | 3.8       | 4.8  |
| LDCLF                                                | Load and convert from long integer to floating | 3.8       | 5.7  |
| LDCLD                                                | Load and convert from long integer to double   | 4.1       | 5.9  |
| LDEXP                                                | Load Exponent                                  | 1.5       |      |

| Mnemonic                                   | Instruction                                                  | Time (μs) |     |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----|
|                                            |                                                              | MIN       | MAX |
| Floating AC—Destination Group: OPR AC, DST |                                                              |           |     |
| STCFI                                      | Store and convert from floating to integer                   | 3.4       | 4.4 |
| STCFL                                      | Store and convert from floating to long integer              | 4.2       | 5.2 |
| STCDI                                      | Store and convert from double to integer                     | 4.2       | 5.2 |
| STCDL                                      | Store and convert from double to long integer                | 4.2       | 5.2 |
| STEXP                                      | Store exponent                                               | 2.4       |     |
| Floating Destination Group: OPR FDST       |                                                              |           |     |
| CLRF                                       | Clear floating                                               | 1.1       |     |
| CLRD                                       | Clear double                                                 | 1.3       |     |
| NEGF                                       | Negate floating                                              | 1.7       |     |
| NEGD                                       | Negate double                                                | 1.7       |     |
| ABSF                                       | Make absolute floating                                       | 1.7       |     |
| ABSD                                       | Make absolute double                                         | 1.7       |     |
| TSTF                                       | Test floating                                                | 1.5       |     |
| TSTD                                       | Test double                                                  | 1.5       |     |
| Operate Group: OPR SRC                     |                                                              |           |     |
| LDFS                                       | Load floating program status OPR DST                         | .88       |     |
| STFPS                                      | Store floating program status                                | .88       |     |
| STST                                       | Store floating status (exception & code and program counter) | 1.3       |     |
|                                            | Copy Condition codes                                         | 1.1       |     |
| SETF                                       | Set floating mode                                            | 1.1       |     |
| SETI                                       | Set integer mode                                             | 1.1       |     |
| SETD                                       | Set double mode                                              | 1.1       |     |
| SETL                                       | Set long integer mode                                        | 1.1       |     |

### Disengage and Fetch Next Instruction

This is the time required by the CPU to disengage from the FPP and fetch the next instruction. If the instruction is a Floating Point instruction then the CPU restarts the cycle described in this section (B.2), otherwise, it returns to the CPU cycle described in section B.1.

CPU time only:

1140 ns 16K Core

1040 ns 8K Core

630 ns MOS

450 ns Bipolar

Example

ADDF A(R), ACO :a floating point add instruction in indexed source mode (6), and in single (32 bit precision).

Pre-Interaction Time:

|                            |                                    |                                |                                 |                                 |  |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| CPU                        | 600 $\mu$ s                        | FPP                            | 150 $\mu$ s                     |                                 |  |
| Source:                    | 300 $\mu$ s<br>Bipolar<br>(MS11-C) | 495 $\mu$ s<br>MOS<br>(MS11-B) | 900 $\mu$ s<br>Core<br>(MM11-L) | 980 $\mu$ s<br>Core<br>(MM11-U) |  |
| Calculation Time:          | 1650                               | 1800                           | 2140                            | 2200                            |  |
| Memory Access<br>(2 words) | <u>1980</u>                        | <u>2300</u>                    | <u>3340</u>                     | <u>3640</u>                     |  |
|                            | 3630                               | 4100                           | 5480                            | 5840                            |  |
| Execution Average          | 3950                               | 3950                           | 3950                            | 3950                            |  |
| Disengage<br>Fetch Next    | 450                                | 630                            | 1040                            | 1140                            |  |

CPU Instruction Time: Starting at T = 0

|          |                            |
|----------|----------------------------|
| Bipolar  | $600 + 3630 + 450 = 4680$  |
| MOS      | $600 + 4100 + 630 = 5330$  |
| 8K Core  | $600 + 5480 + 1040 = 7120$ |
| 16K Core | $600 + 5840 + 1140 = 7580$ |

FPP Instruction Time: Starting at T = 450

|          |                            |
|----------|----------------------------|
| Bipolar  | $150 + 3630 + 3950 = 7730$ |
| MOS      | $150 + 4100 + 3950 = 8200$ |
| 8K Core  | $150 + 5480 + 3950 = 9580$ |
| 16K Core | $150 + 5840 + 3950 = 9940$ |

## B.5 TYPICAL INSTRUCTION TIMES

### INSTRUCTION TIMES in Microseconds ( $\mu$ s)<sup>2</sup>

| CPU TYPE                    |                              | 11/35-11/40        | 11/45-11/50  |              |              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| Memory Type                 |                              | Core               | Core         | MOS          | Bipolar      |
| Memory Speed                |                              | .980 $\mu$ s       | .980 $\mu$ s | .425 $\mu$ s | .300 $\mu$ s |
| Floating Point Instructions |                              |                    |              |              |              |
| Instr. Type                 | PDP-11 Mnemonic <sup>1</sup> |                    |              |              |              |
| Compare                     |                              |                    |              |              |              |
| Reg. to Reg. (32)           | CMPF 0,1                     |                    | 4.62         | 4.62         | 4.62         |
| Mem. to Reg. (32)           | CMPF (3),2                   |                    | 8.40         | 7.06         | 6.74         |
| Compare                     |                              |                    |              |              |              |
| Reg. to Reg. (64)           | CMPD 2,0                     |                    | 4.87         | 4.87         | 4.87         |
| Mem. to Reg. (64)           | CMPD (1),3                   |                    | 12.29        | 9.61         | 8.97         |
| Load (32 Bit)               | LDF (R5),0                   | n/a <sup>3</sup>   | 7.00         | 5.66         | 5.34         |
| Load (64 Bit)               | LDD (R3),1                   |                    | 10.84        | 8.16         | 7.52         |
| Store (32)                  | STF 2,(R0)                   | n/a <sup>3</sup>   | 6.38         | 5.04         | 4.72         |
| Store (64)                  | STD 3,(R2)                   |                    | 10.02        | 7.34         | 6.70         |
| Add (32)                    |                              |                    |              |              |              |
| Reg. to Reg.                | ADDF 1,0                     |                    | 5.67         | 5.67         | 5.67         |
| Mem. to Reg.                | ADDF (R2),2                  |                    | 9.45         | 8.11         | 7.79         |
| Mem. to Mem. <sup>3</sup>   | ADDF (R1)                    | 26.80 <sup>3</sup> |              |              |              |
| Add (64)                    |                              |                    |              |              |              |
| Reg. to Reg.                | ADDD 2,0                     |                    | 6.97         | 6.97         | 6.97         |
| Mem. to Reg.                | ADDD (R1),2                  |                    | 14.39        | 11.71        | 11.07        |
| Subt. (32)                  |                              |                    |              |              |              |
| Reg. to Reg.                | SUBF 3,2                     | n/a                | 5.67         | 5.67         | 5.67         |
| Mem. to Reg.                | SUBF (5),1                   |                    | 9.45         | 8.11         | 7.79         |
| Mem. to Mem.                | ADDF (R0)                    | 27.1 <sup>3</sup>  |              |              |              |
| Subt. (64)                  |                              |                    |              |              |              |
| Reg. to Reg.                | SUBD 0,1                     |                    | 6.97         | 6.97         | 6.97         |
| Mem. to Reg.                | SUBD (4),3                   |                    | 14.39        | 11.71        | 11.07        |
| Mult. (32)                  |                              |                    |              |              |              |
| Reg. to Reg.                | MULF 2,0                     | n/a                | 7.62         | 7.62         | 7.62         |
| Mem. to Reg.                | MULF (0),3                   |                    | 11.40        | 10.06        | 9.74         |
| Mem. to Mem.                | MULF (R2)                    | 33.42 <sup>3</sup> |              |              |              |

<sup>1</sup> Random register assignments are shown to illustrate PDP-11 flexibility.

<sup>2</sup> Average times are shown.

<sup>3</sup> All 11/40 Floating Point operations are Memory to Memory.

# INSTRUCTION TIMES in Microseconds (us) (Cont.)

| CPU TYPE     | 11/35-11/40  | 11/45-11/50  |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| Memory Type  | Core         | Core         | MOS          | Bipolar      |
| Memory Speed | .980 $\mu$ s | .980 $\mu$ s | .425 $\mu$ s | .300 $\mu$ s |

| Floating Point Instructions |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Instr. Type                 | PDP-11 Mnemonic <sup>1</sup> |

|                  |                 |                    |       |       |       |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-------|-------|-------|
| Mult. (64)       |                 |                    |       |       |       |
| Reg. to Reg.     | MULD 0,3        |                    | 11.42 | 11.42 | 11.42 |
| Mem. to Reg.     | MULD (5),2      |                    | 18.84 | 16.16 | 15.52 |
| Divide (32)      |                 |                    |       |       |       |
| Reg. to Reg.     | DIYF 6,0        | n/a                | 8.62  | 8.62  | 8.62  |
| Mem. to Reg.     | DIVF (6),1      |                    | 12.40 | 11.06 | 10.74 |
| Mem. to Mem.     | DIVF (R5)       | 51.14 <sup>3</sup> |       |       |       |
| Divide (64)      |                 |                    |       |       |       |
| Reg. to Reg.     | DIVD 4,1        |                    | 23.02 | 23.02 | 23.02 |
| Mem. to Reg.     | DIVD (2),5      |                    |       |       |       |
| Load             | MOV (R0),R1     | 2.32               | 2.01  | 1.17  | .75   |
| Store            | MOV R1,<br>(R2) | 2.58               | 2.13  | 1.17  | .75   |
| Add (R-R)        | ADD R3,R4       | 1.07               | .97   | .51   | .30   |
| Add (mem-R)      | ADD (R5),R0     | 2.54               | 1.8   | 1.0   | .75   |
| Subtract (R-R)   | SUB R1,R2       | 1.07               | .97   | .51   | .30   |
| Subt. (mem-R)    | SUB (R0),R3     | 2.54               | 1.8   | 1.0   | .75   |
| Multiply (R-R)   | MUL R3,R0       | 9.16               | 3.89  | 3.51  | 3.30  |
| Multiply (mem-R) | MUL (R3),R0     | 9.66               | 4.8   | 4.2   | 3.6   |
| Divide (R-R)     | DIV R0,R3       | 11.58              | 8.39  | 8.01  | 7.8   |
| Divide (mem-R)   | DIV (R1),R5     | 12.08              | 9.37  | 8.50  | 8.10  |
| Compare (R-R)    | COM R2,R1       | 1.07               | .97   | .51   | .30   |
| Compare (mem-R)  | COM (R0),R6     | 2.54               | 1.8   | 1.0   | .75   |
| Branch           | BEQ             | 2.36               | 1.18  | .98   | .60   |

<sup>1</sup> Random register assignments are shown to illustrate PDP-11 flexibility.

<sup>2</sup> Average times are shown.

<sup>3</sup> All 11/40 Floating Point operations are Memory to Memory.

11:45-11:50

13:55-11:40

CPU TYPE



Branch 2.56  
Random register assignments are shown to illustrate PDP-11 flexibility.  
Average times are shown.  
All 11:40 Floating Point operations are Memory to Memory.



## APPENDIX C INSTRUCTION INDEX

|                   |      |              |             |
|-------------------|------|--------------|-------------|
| ADC(B) .....      | 4-19 | HALT .....   | 4-70        |
| ADD .....         | 4-25 | INC(B) ..... | 4-8         |
| ASL(B) .....      | 4-14 | IOT .....    | 4-64        |
| ASH .....         | 8-8  | JMP .....    | 4-52        |
| ASHC .....        | 8-9  | JSR .....    | 4-54        |
| ASR(B) .....      | 4-13 | MARK .....   | 4-57        |
| BCC .....         | 4-40 | MFPD .....   | 11-19       |
| BCS .....         | 4-41 | MFPI .....   | 9-18, 11-18 |
| BEQ .....         | 4-35 | MOV(B) ..... | 4-23        |
| BGE .....         | 4-43 | MTPD .....   | 11-20       |
| BGT .....         | 4-45 | MTPI .....   | 9-19, 11-20 |
| BHI .....         | 4-48 | MUL .....    | 8-6         |
| BHIS .....        | 4-50 | NEG(B) ..... | 4-10        |
| BIC(B) .....      | 4-29 | NOP .....    | 4-73        |
| BIS(B) .....      | 4-30 | RESET .....  | 4-72        |
| BIT(B) .....      | 4-28 | ROL(B) ..... | 4-16        |
| BLT .....         | 4-44 | ROR(B) ..... | 4-15        |
| BLE .....         | 4-46 | RTI .....    | 4-65        |
| BLO .....         | 4-51 | RTS .....    | 4-56        |
| BLOS .....        | 4-49 | RTT .....    | 4-66        |
| BMI .....         | 4-37 | SBC(B) ..... | 4-20        |
| BNE .....         | 4-34 | SOB .....    | 4-59        |
| BPL .....         | 4-36 | SPL .....    | 4-60        |
| BPT .....         | 4-63 | SUB .....    | 4-26        |
| BR .....          | 4-33 | SWAB .....   | 4-17        |
| BVC .....         | 4-38 | SXT .....    | 4-21        |
| BVS .....         | 4-39 | TRAP .....   | 4-62        |
| CLR(B) .....      | 4-6  | TST(B) ..... | 4-11        |
| CMP(B) .....      | 4-24 | WAIT .....   | 4-71        |
| COM(B) .....      | 4-7  | XOR .....    | 4-31        |
| COND. CODES ..... | 4-73 |              |             |
| DEC(B) .....      | 4-9  |              |             |
| DIV .....         | 8-7  |              |             |
| EMT .....         | 4-61 |              |             |
| FADD .....        | 8-12 |              |             |
| FDIV .....        | 8-13 |              |             |
| FMUL .....        | 8-13 |              |             |
| FSUB .....        | 8-12 |              |             |

## FPP INSTRUCTIONS

|             |       |             |       |
|-------------|-------|-------------|-------|
| ABSD .....  | 12-25 | NEGD .....  | 12-13 |
| ABSF .....  | 12-25 | NEGF .....  | 12-13 |
| ADDD .....  | 12-11 |             |       |
| ADDF .....  | 12-11 | SETD .....  | 12-27 |
|             |       | SETF .....  | 12-27 |
| CFCC .....  | 12-30 | SETI .....  | 12-28 |
| CLRD .....  | 12-24 | SETL .....  | 12-28 |
| CLRF .....  | 12-24 | STCDF ..... | 12-19 |
| CPMD .....  | 12-16 | STCDI ..... | 12-21 |
| CMPF .....  | 12-16 | STCDL ..... | 12-21 |
|             |       | STCFD ..... | 12-19 |
| DIVD .....  | 12-15 | STCFI ..... | 12-21 |
| DIVF .....  | 12-15 | STCFL ..... | 12-21 |
|             |       | STD .....   | 12-10 |
| LDCDF ..... | 12-18 | STEXP ..... | 12-23 |
| LDCFD ..... | 12-18 | STF .....   | 12-10 |
| LDCID ..... | 12-20 | STFPS ..... | 12-19 |
| LDCIF ..... | 12-20 | STST .....  | 12-20 |
| LDCLD ..... | 12-20 | SUBD .....  | 12-12 |
| LDCLF ..... | 12-20 | SUBF .....  | 12-12 |
| LDD .....   | 12-9  |             |       |
| LDEXP ..... | 12-22 | TSTD .....  | 12-26 |
| LDF .....   | 12-9  | TSTF .....  | 12-26 |
| LDFPS ..... | 12-29 |             |       |
|             |       |             |       |
| MODD .....  | 12-17 |             |       |
| MODF .....  | 12-17 |             |       |
| MULD .....  | 12-14 |             |       |
| MULF .....  | 12-14 |             |       |

## This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are approximately 20 lines visible. The paper appears to be from a notebook or a set of legal pads. There is no handwriting or other markings on the page.

## This image shows a single page of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

# digital

DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION, Corporate Headquarters: Maynard, Massachusetts 01754, Telephone: (617)897-5111—SALES AND SERVICE OFFICES: UNITED STATES—ALABAMA, Huntsville • ARIZONA, Phoenix and Tucson • CALIFORNIA, El Segundo, Los Angeles, Oakland, Ridgecrest, San Diego, San Francisco (Mountain View), Santa Ana, Santa Clara, Stanford, Sunnyvale and Woodland Hills • COLORADO, Englewood • CONNECTICUT, Fairfield and Meriden • DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA, Washington (Lanham, MD) • FLORIDA, Ft. Lauderdale and Orlando • GEORGIA, Atlanta • HAWAII, Honolulu • ILLINOIS, Chicago (Rolling Meadows) • INDIANA, Indianapolis • IOWA, Bettendorf • KENTUCKY, Louisville • LOUISIANA, New Orleans (Metairie) • MARYLAND, Odenton • MASSACHUSETTS, Marlborough, Waltham and Westfield • MICHIGAN, Detroit (Farmington Hills) • MINNESOTA, Minneapolis • MISSOURI, Kansas City (Independence) and St. Louis • NEW HAMPSHIRE, Manchester • NEW JERSEY, Cherry Hill, Fairfield, Metuchen and Princeton • NEW MEXICO, Albuquerque • NEW YORK, Albany, Buffalo (Cheektowaga), Long Island (Huntington Station), Manhattan, Rochester and Syracuse • NORTH CAROLINA, Durham/Chapel Hill • OHIO, Cleveland (Euclid), Columbus and Dayton • OKLAHOMA, Tulsa • OREGON, Eugene and Portland • PENNSYLVANIA, Allentown, Philadelphia (Bluebell) and Pittsburgh • SOUTH CAROLINA, Columbia • TENNESSEE, Knoxville and Nashville • TEXAS, Austin, Dallas and Houston • UTAH, Salt Lake City • VIRGINIA, Richmond • WASHINGTON, Bellevue • WISCONSIN, Milwaukee (Brookfield) • INTERNATIONAL—ARGENTINA, Buenos Aires • AUSTRALIA, Adelaide, Brisbane, Canberra, Melbourne, Perth and Sydney • AUSTRIA, Vienna • BELGIUM, Brussels • BOLIVIA, La Paz • BRAZIL, Rio de Janeiro and Sao Paulo • CANADA, Calgary, Edmonton, Halifax, London, Montreal, Ottawa, Toronto, Vancouver and Winnipeg • CHILE, Santiago • DENMARK, Copenhagen • FINLAND, Helsinki • FRANCE, Lyon, Grenoble and Paris • GERMAN FEDERAL REPUBLIC, Cologne, Frankfurt, Hamburg, Hannover, Munich, Nuremberg, Stuttgart and West Berlin • HONG KONG • INDIA, Bombay • INDONESIA, Djakarta • IRELAND, Dublin • ITALY, Milan, Rome and Turin • IRAN, Tehran • JAPAN, Osaka and Tokyo • MALAYSIA, Kuala Lumpur • MEXICO, Mexico City • NETHERLANDS, Utrecht • NEW ZEALAND, Auckland and Christchurch • NORWAY, Oslo • PUERTO RICO, San Juan • SINGAPORE • SPAIN, Madrid • SWEDEN, Gothenburg and Stockholm • SWITZERLAND, Geneva and Zurich • UNITED KINGDOM, Birmingham, Bristol, Epsom, Edinburgh, Leeds, Leicester, London, Manchester and Reading • VENEZUELA, Caracas •





digital

PRINTED IN U.S.A. EB 07643 20/77 03A 04 010